

## Notice of Meeting:

I hereby give notice that an ordinary Meeting of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee will be held on:

**Date:** Thursday 22 June 2017  
**Time:** 10am  
**Meeting Room:** Council Chambers  
**Venue:** Waikato Regional Council, 401 Grey Street, Hamilton East

VRJ Payne  
**Chief Executive Officer**

---

## Integrated Catchment Management Committee

### Agenda

<b>Co-Chair (North)</b>	Cr Stu Husband	
<b>Co-Chair (South)</b>	Cr Stu Kneebone	
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	<b>Members</b>	
	Cr Fred Lichtwark	
	Cr Dal Minogue	
	Cr Jennie Hayman	
	Cr Kataraina Hodge	
	Cr Kathy White	
	Cr Stu Husband	
	Cr Stu Kneebone	
<b>Catchment Committee Chairs</b>	Sue Yerex	Lake Taupō Catchment
	Sally Strang	Upper Waikato Catchment
	Maxine Moana-Tuwangai	Central Waikato Catchment
	Malcolm Lumsden	Lower Waikato Catchment
	Rob Jolly	West Coast Catchments
	Rachel Barton	Waipā Catchment
	Robert Hicks	Waihou-Piako Catchment
	John Sanford	Coromandel Catchment
<b>Chairman of Council <u>or</u> Deputy Chairman of Council</b>	Cr Alan Livingston	<i>Ex-officio</i>
	Cr Tipa Mahuta	
<b>Quorum</b>	Nine members	

Sarah McLeay  
Democracy Advisor

Telephone: 0800 800 401  
sarah.mcleay@waikatoregion.govt.nz  
Website: www.waikatoregion.govt.nz

### **OBJECTIVE:**

To set objectives, priorities and levels of service for catchment management and monitor achievement levels through the outcomes.

### **SCOPE OF ACTIVITY:**

1. To deal with all catchment management activities related to:
  - (a) Asset management
  - (b) Flood control programmes
  - (c) Land drainage programmes
  - (d) Biodiversity and natural heritage operations
  - (e) Biosecurity operations
  - (f) Harbour and catchment management
  - (g) Hazard management and community safety activities
  - (h) River systems management
  - (i) Soil conservation and land management programmes

### **POWER TO ACT:**

1. To approve zone management plans comprising relevant integrated catchment management priorities (listed above) and asset management plans consistent with Council approved budgets and policy.
2. To monitor the implementation of the regional pest management plan against the annual operational plan budget; and receipt of the regional pest management plan annual report.

### **POWER TO RECOMMEND:**

1. Consideration of region wide implications of any significant changes to the operational environment which may impact council's ability to provide flood protection infrastructure and biosecurity consistent with agreed levels of service for recommendation to Council.
2. Input to the development of Council's infrastructure strategy, scheme land licence policy, the Waikato Marine Oil Spill Contingency plan, and the Regional Pest Management Plan for recommendation to the Strategy and Policy Committee.

Item	Table of Contents	Page
1	<b><u>Apologies</u></b>	
<b>SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL</b>		
2	<b><u>Confirmation of Agenda</u></b>	
3	<b><u>Disclosures of Interest</u></b>	
	<i>Disclosures of actual or potential interest relating to the business of the meeting and any actions to manage.</i>	
4	<b><u>Confirmation of Minutes of a meeting on 13 April 2017</u></b> Doc 10264925	<b>7-21</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Minutes of meeting held on 13 April 2017</i></li> <li>• <i>Extract from Council meeting held on 27 April 2017</i></li> </ul>	
5	<b><u>Issues/Actions from Integrated Catchment Management Meetings</u></b> Doc 3266517 and 3266517	<b>22-25</b>
	<i>Report to update the Committee on actions and issues discussed at previous meetings.</i>	
6	<b><u>ICM Groups of Activities – Financial Status Report to 31 May 2017</u></b> Doc 9812261	<b>26-27</b>
	<i>Report on the financial status of programmes and activities that fall within the scope of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.</i>	
7	<b><u>Waikato Regional Plan rules pertaining to land drainage maintenance</u></b> Doc 10493763	<b>28-33</b>
	<i>Report to provide a response to a request received from the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee to clarify the rules in the Waikato Regional Plan as they relate to activities associated with the maintenance of waterways within land drainage schemes.</i>	
8	<b><u>Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review</u></b> Doc 10586741	<b>34-45</b>
	<p><i>Report to:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>a provide the Committee with an overview of the issues that are impacting the flood protection and control works, integrated catchment services, and regional hazards and emergency response activities, in lieu on further consideration as part of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018- 2028 Long Term Plan</i></li> <li><i>b provide the Committee with an overview of the feedback provided by catchment committees on these issues; and</i></li> <li><i>c alert the Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future, but are unlikely to require specific consideration at this point in time.</i></li> </ul>	

## SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL

- 9 **Lake Taupō Zone Plan – June 2017** 46-110  
Doc 10583343

*Report to seek adoption of the zone plan for Lake Taupō prepared by the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee.*

## SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL

- 10 **Waikato Regional Council comments on Department of Conservation's draft Threatened Species Strategy** 111-171  
Doc 10591755

*Report to provide the initial comments by Policy and Natural Heritage staff on the Department of Conservation's draft Threatened Species Strategy. A more detailed Waikato Regional Council submission will be considered by the Strategy and Policy Committee prior to being submitted to DOC by the 31 July 2017 deadline.*

- 11 **Myrtle Rust Response – Ministry for Primary Industries** 172  
Doc 10614003

*Report to provide an update on the Myrtle Rust national biosecurity response being led by the Ministry for Primary Industries.*

*(Please note that there is potential for this item to be moved depending on the arrival of Ministry for Primary Industries representatives at the meeting)*

- 12 **Flood events report March to April 2017** 173-190  
Doc 1055419

*Report to provide an overview of the recent flood events, the impacts these have had within the zones and the responses and remediation needed.*

## SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL

## SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL

- Summary of recommendations made in Catchment Committees and Drainage Advisory Subcommittees** 191-193

- 13 **Catchment Committee Meetings May and June 2017**

- 13.1 **Upper Waikato Catchment Committee** 194-201  
Doc 10523484

*Minutes of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 19 May 2017.*

- 13.2 **Lake Taupō Catchment Committee** 202-207  
Doc 10400416

*Minutes of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting of 5 May 2017.*

- 13.3 Waipā Catchment Committee** **208-211**  
Doc 10364900  
*Minutes of the Waipā Catchment Committee meeting of 3 May 2017.*
- 13.4 Lower Waikato Catchment Committee** **212-213**  
Doc 10426042  
*Minutes of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 18 May 2017.*
- 13.5 West Coast Catchment Committee** **221-228**  
Doc 10571377  
*Minutes of the West Coast Catchment Committee meeting of 6 June 2017.*
- 13.6 Central Waikato Catchment Committee** **229-235**  
Doc 10526529  
*Minutes of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 31 May 2017.*
- 13.7 Waihou Piako Catchment Committee** **236-247**  
Doc 10523485  
*Minutes of the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee meeting of 26 May 2017.*
- 13.8 Coromandel Catchment Committee** **248-261**  
Doc 10396108  
*Minutes of the Coromandel Catchment Committee meeting of 15 May 2017.*
- 14 Drainage Advisory Subcommittee Meetings April, May and June 2017**
- 14.1 Aka Aka Otatau Drainage Advisory Subcommittee** **262-266**  
10402787 and 10588422  
*Minutes of Aka Aka Otatau Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meetings of 7 April and 12 May 2017.*
- 14.2 Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee** **267-275**  
Doc 10445504  
*Minutes of Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee of 29 May 2017.*
- 14.3 Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee** **276-282**  
Doc 10554593  
*Minutes of Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee of 2 June 2017.*

## SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL

- 15      **Deputation - Primary Stakeholders Group – Waikare-Whangamarino Catchment**      283-284

*This is a presentation from a deputation to present the views of the Primary Stakeholders Group – Waikare-Whangamarino Catchment in relation to current catchment planning processes.*

---

## Integrated Catchment Management Committee MINUTES

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee held in Council Chambers, 401 Grey Street, Hamilton East on Thursday 13 April 2017 at 10am.

<b>Waikato Regional Councillors</b>	<b>Present:</b> Stu Husband <b>Co-Chair (North)</b> Stu Kneebone <b>Co-Chair (South)</b> Fred Lichtwark Kataraina Hodge
<b>Lake Taupō Catchment Chair</b>	Sue Yerex
<b>Upper Waikato Catchment Chair</b>	Sally Strang
<b>Central Waikato Catchment Chair</b>	Maxine Moana-Tuwangai
<b>Lower Waikato Catchment Chair</b>	Malcolm Lumsden
<b>West Coast Catchments Chair</b>	Rob Jolly
<b>Waihou-Piako Catchment Chair</b>	Robert Hicks
<b>Waikato Regional Council Staff</b>	<b>In Attendance:</b> Clare Crickett – Director Integrated Catchment Management Bruce Peploe – Manager Business and Technical Services Matthew Davis – Manager Lower Waikato/Waipā/West Coast Catchments Patrick Whaley – Manager Integrated Catchment Management Mark Brockelsby – Senior Advisor resource Use Sarah McLeay – Democracy Advisor

**Apologies**

Kathy White  
 Alan Livingston  
 Dal Minogue  
 John Sanford  
 Rachel Barton  
 Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai for lateness  
 Jennie Hayman

**Accepted**

It was noted that prior to the meeting Clare Crickett and Stu Kneebone had advised Kathy White, John Sandford, Dal Minogue, Rachel Barton and Jennie Hayman, that:

- due to forecasted weather; and
  - the long distances they travelled to the meeting;
- it would be safer not to attend.

**SECTION A: UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Confirmation of Agenda**

Agenda Item 2

Sue Yerex moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/11

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the agenda of the meeting of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee of 13 April 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/11)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

Agenda Item 3

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Deputation – Primary Stakeholders Group – Waikare-Whangamarino Catchment**

Agenda Item 4

This item was cancelled due to weather and associated travel conditions.

**Minutes of Previous Meeting on 16 February 2017**

Agenda Item 5 Doc 9912250

Sue Yerex moved/Sally Strang seconded

ICM17/12

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the Minutes of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting of 16 February 2017 be received and approved as a correct record.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/12)**

**Issues/Actions from Integrated Catchment Management Meetings**

Agenda Item 6 Doc 3266517

This report was taken as read. It provided an update on actions and issues discussed from the previous Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting held on 16 February 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Fred Lichtwark seconded

ICM17/13

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Issues/Actions from Integrated Catchment Management Meetings' (Doc 3266517) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/13)**

**Integrated Catchment Management Group of Activities – Financial Status Report to 28 February 2017**

Agenda Item 7 Doc 9813731

Presented by Bruce Peplow (Manager Business and Technical Services) to provide a report on the financial status of programmes and activities that fall within the scope of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- The operational programme was proceeding as planned, but the capital programme is running behind schedule. This was the result of a number of factors, including weather conditions over March and April. Drain maintenance has been slowed by wind over the summer.
- There was concern that consent requirements for drain cleaning meant that some land owners were unable to clean drains on their property, where necessary to prevent flooding, in a timely manner.
- New consent requirements were notified well ahead of impact so there was good lead in for contractors to make alternative arrangements where requirements would affect their workload and income.
- There was a fast track resource consent process available. Fast tracking does occur where justified.
- Staff would look into the extent of drain cleaning that could be undertaken on a permitted activity basis and provide that information to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.
- Drain cleaning can't be undertaken during duck shooting season causing further maintenance delays in some cases.
- More capital works could be expected as a result of flood events. Financial reserves were available within the zones to address low – medium level flood impacts. Responses to significant events may be funded from the regional disaster fund.
- A review of programme expenditure would be undertaken over the next month as part of forecasting for the final quarter of the year.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/14

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Integrated Catchment Management Group of Activities – Financial Status Report to 28 February 2017' (Doc 9813731) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/14)**

**Rainfall and Flood Event 7 – 12 March 2017**

Agenda Item 8 Doc 10167432

Presented by Adam Munro (Manager Hauraki/Coromandel Integrated Catchment Management) and Rick Liewing (Team Leader Regional Hazards and Environmental Compliance) to report on the rainfall and flood event that occurred over the period 7 – 12 March 2017, and provided preliminary observations on the most recent events (Cyclones Debbie and Cook).

During discussion the following points were noted:

- Rainfall had been well above seasonal averages.
- Water tables were high and ground was saturated.
- Currently in local and regional response modes.
- Close liaison had been maintained with Mercury NZ Limited to manage the outflow from Lake Karapiro and consequential flood risks in Hamilton and the peaks of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers at Ngaruawahia. Arrangements were subject to the High Flow Management Plan which had three phases. Phase 1 involved initial discussions with Mercury. Phase 2 involved managing outflows from Lake Taupo and Lake Karapiro. Phase 3 was focused on dam safety. There was a low probability that we would reach phase 3.
- Genesis Energy Limited had a consent to discharge into Lake Taupō, however, discharge could be turned off in flood events.
- The impact of compacted peat at Ngatea and mangroves at storm water outlets was noted.
- The importance of ponding zones was noted, along with the need to communicate their location with relevant land owners.
- District councils had been provided with sand bags and technical advice.
- Modelling was based on current weather forecasts.
- Flood forecasting tools were very useful and provided information to Civil Defence.
- Regular inspections were undertaken of stop banks in the Lower Waikato and Hauraki areas, in particular.

Sally Strang moved/Sue Yerex seconded.

ICM17/15

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Rainfall and Flood Event 7 – 12 March 2017’ (Doc 10167432) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/15)**

**SECTION B: FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL****Regional Pest Management Plan Review**

Agenda Item 9 Doc 10186511

Presented by Patrick Whaley – Manager Integrated Catchment Management to provide an update from Integrated Catchment Services staff on work underway to potentially review the current Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP).

During discussion the following points were noted:

- The current Waikato RPMP was inconsistent with new requirements of the National Policy Direction for Pest Management (NPD) released by the Ministry of Primary Industries in 2015. It was up to Council to decide on a timeframe in which to comply

with the Ministry's NPD requirements. This would inform the Long Term Plan process (LTP).

- Neighbouring regions and biosecurity partners were also calling for greater collaboration on pest programmes.
- Withdrawal of TBfree pest control from the Waikato region was noted. TBfree was previously part funded by regional councils. Whether or not Council picked up these areas for ongoing pest management would need to be discussed through the LTP. Any decision to pick up the pest management from these areas would need to be in partnership with the Department of Conservation.
- Canadian geese were raised as a pest management issue. There was a concern that the geese were responsible for the elimination of sea grass at Raglan and Aotea and that had had a detrimental impact on the flounder fishery. Shooting as a game bird was inadequate in terms of numbers to control the problem.
- It was noted that pampus could be included in the review of the regional pest management plan.
- Further information will be provided to Catchment and Drainage Committees on biosecurity issues to be discussed in the upcoming LTP.
- Other concerning species included rabbits, myrtle rust, brown marmorated stink bugs and lake snow (*lindavia intermedia* algae). Ministry of Primary Industries had notified the Council that Myrtle rust had been detected on Raoul Island. That was of major concern as it attacks many native species including pohutukawa, manuka, kanuka and a number of horticultural species. Myrtle rust was wind borne and unfortunately it seems just a matter of time before it got to mainland NZ. Ministry of Primary Industries was the lead agency.

Cr Stu Kneebone moved/Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/16

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Regional Pest Management Plan Review' (9 Doc 10186511) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/16)**

Cr Fred Lichtwark moved/Cr Stu Husband seconded

ICM17/17

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the control of Canadian Geese be considered as part of the Regional Pest Management Plan Review.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/17)**

**SECTION A: UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL**

**March 2017 overview of Waikato 2017 TBfree activities**

Agenda Item 10 Doc 10224590

This item was taken as read. More information was requested as there was concern that TB free vector populations don't necessarily correlate with infection free herds.

Cr Stu Kneebone moved/Robert Hicks seconded

ICM17/18

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'March 2017 overview of Waikato 2017 TBfree activities' (Doc 10224590) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/18)**

**Freshwater Improvement Fund Applications**

Agenda Item 11 Doc 10224977

Provided an overview of the Freshwater Improvement Fund applications process. During discussion the following points were noted:

- Applications were still awaiting review.
- An application will be made for funds for the West Coast catchments.
- It was noted that organisations may be able to pool funds so as to be eligible to apply.
- A fresh planning process for the West Coast harbours is planned.

Maxine Moana-Tuwahangi arrived 11.50am

Cr Stu Kneebone moved/ Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Freshwater Improvement Fund Applications' (Doc 10224977) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/19)**

**SECTION A: UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****SECTION B: FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL****Catchment Committee Meetings February/March 2017**

Agenda Item 12

**Upper Waikato Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.1 Doc 10138503

Upper Waikato Catchment Committee (UWCC) Chair (Sally Strang) outlined the UWCC meeting of 24 March 2017.

Sally Strang moved/Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/20

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 The report of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 24 March 2017 (Doc 10138503) be received.**
- 2 The resolutions made at that meeting be noted.**

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Issues/Actions from Upper Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting August 2016**

- 1 the Council documents setting out the incident triage process will be made available to Upper Waikato Catchment Committee by email prior to the next meeting.**
- 2 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee will be informed at the next meeting whether Council staff can provide the Committee with a report on numbers of incidents and response actions in each case.**

**Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting Reports (16 February 2017)**

- 3 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee ask the Integrated Catchment Management Committee whether the Review of the Catchment and Drainage Committees had been sufficiently:
  - o forward thinking; and
  - o substance rather than process focused;
 to adequately support the Committee to add the level of value necessary given its functions; and
- 4 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee develop a vision as a reference point moving forward.

**Whirinaki Arm Restoration Project move to after the ICMC reports**

- 5 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the concept proposal and the resourcing to undertake the next step of scoping and developing a strategy.

**Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan**

- 6 feedback be sought from the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee on the proposed approach.
- 7 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse a business case to expand Council's possum control operations in the South Waikato, through the Long Term Plan.

**Upper Waikato Zone – Zone Status Report to 31 January 2017**

- 8 Council staff will report back the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee on the next actions with non-complying landowners.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/20)

**Lake Taupō Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.2 Doc 10041207

Lake Taupō Catchment Committee (LTCC) Chair (Sue Yerex) outlined the LTCC meeting of 1 March 2017.

Sue Yerex moved/Sally Strang seconded

ICM17/21

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting held on 1 March 2017 (Doc 10041207) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.

**RECOMMENDED THAT**

**Proposed Pest Management Response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan**

- 1 feedback be sought from the Taupō Catchment Committee on the proposed approach.
- 2 the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee endorse a business case to expand WRC possum control operations in the South Waikato, through the LTP.

**Lake Taupō – Zone Status Report to December 2016**

- 3 the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee allocate an additional \$30,000 from the Lake Taupō reserves to the catchment maintenance budget to support the 2016-17 works programme.**

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/21)

**Waipa Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.3 Doc 10139903

The Committee was provided with copies of the minutes of the meeting of Waipa Catchment Committee on 16 March 2017.

Cr Stu Kneebone moved/Cr Kataraina Hodge seconded

ICM1722

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Waipa Catchment Committee meeting held on 16 March 2017 (Doc 10139903) be received.**
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.**

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Appointment of Chair and Deputy Chair, Waipa Catchment Committee**

- 1 Rachel Barton be appointed as the Chair of the Waipa Catchment Committee.**

**Proposed Pest Management Response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan**

- 2 the Committee supports the proposed approach as outlined, and**
- 3 the Waipa Catchment Committee endorse the business case to expand Waikato Regional Council possum control operations in the Rangitoto and Hauhangaroa ranges Waikato, through the up-coming LTP.**

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/22)

**Lower Waikato Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.4 Doc 10182225

Lower Waikato Catchment Committee (LWCC) Chair (Malcolm Lumsden) outlined the LWCC meeting of 31 March 2017. The loss of crops as a result of flooding was noted along with a concern about the efficiency of a pump.

Malcolm Lumsden moved/Stu Husband seconded.

ICM17/23

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 31 March 2017 (Doc 10182225) be received.**
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.**

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Lower Waikato Annual Work Programme Update 2016/2017**

- 1 the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee support the proposal for the construction of the Bell Road stopbank to be brought forward in to the 2016/2017**

**financial year with approved financial expenditure of \$220,000 to be forecasted into the Lower Waikato capital Renewals programme as part of the fourth quarter forecasting round.**

**General Business**

- 2 the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee recommend that a public forum be established at the commencement of each of its meeting, which allows for a period of 30 minutes for members of the public to speak to the Committee on matters that fall within its terms of reference.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/23)**

**West Coast Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.5 Doc 10075825

West Coast Catchment Committee (WCCC) Chair (Rob Jolly) outlined the WCCC meeting of 8 March 2017.

During discussion the following matters were noted:

- Concern raised about the whitebait fishery related to wild not farmed whitebait.
- The Department of Conservation may not have the authority to prevent the commercial sale of whitebait. Other organisations with roles relevant to the fishery are the Ministry of Primary Industries and tribal entities.

Following discussion and with the agreement of the Chair the recommendations referring to the whitebait fishery were amended as noted below.

Rob Jolly moved/Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/  
24

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the West Coast Catchment Committee meeting held on 8 March 2017 (Doc 10075825) be received.**
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.**

**RECOMMENDED THAT**

**Annual Plan 2017/18 Budget Increases**

- 1 staff determine all funding options and combinations including the rate impacts for each and report back by email to all West Coast Catchments Committee Members who will provide feedback.**
- 2 following this, staff work with a working group of the West Coast Catchments Committee made up of Mike Moss, Cr Fred Lichtwark, Rob Jolly, Mark Smyth, Cr Deb Pilkington and Maxine Moana-Tuwahangi to determine the preferred option and reasons.**
- 3 the working group recommend the preferred option is approved by the West Coast Catchments Committee at its next meeting scheduled for 23 May 2017 for recommendation to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.**

**Department of Conservation Management of the Whitebait Fishery Report**

- 4 the Council work with other agencies to better preserve and protect the wild whitebait fishery in the West Coast catchments, including the investigation of appropriate mechanisms such as the imposition of a moratorium on commercial sale.**

**The motion was put and carried (ICM17/24)**

**Central Waikato Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.6 Doc 10133525

Central Waikato Catchment Committee (CWCC) Chair (Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai) outlined the CWCC meeting of 23 March 2017.

Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai moved/Sue Yerex seconded

ICM17/25

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 23 March 2017 (Doc 10133525) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Issues/Actions from Central Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting 31 August 2016**

- 1 the Central Waikato Catchment Committee recommend that Waikato Regional Council initiate a project to compile an online meta database that:
  - lists databases held by Council
  - identify the data
  - the purpose of the data
  - the collection period
  - frequency of collection
  - collection agency
  - restrictions on access
  - how to request information.
- 2 the Central Waikato Catchment Committee recommend that an article be placed in the "Your Waikato" publication in 2017 to raise the profile of the Catchment Committees.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/25)

**Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.7 Doc 10096752

Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee (WPCC) Chair (Robert Hicks) outlined the WPCC meeting of 17 March 2017.

Robert Hicks/Cr Stu Husband

ICM17/26

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee meeting held on 17 March 2017 (Doc 10096752) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Chair's Report for 17th March 2017 meeting**

- 1 the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee reinstate the membership of the Chair of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee to the Committee.

**Komata Stream Service Level Review Options Report**

- 2 *Option 1 – Maintaining the existing assets at current level of service* be implemented based on councils stopbank prioritisation programme.

- 3 the Committee considers *Option 2-Include non-asset features downstream of SH26* as the preferred option for detailed investigation and implementation.

**Waihou-Piako Zone Status Report to 31 January 2017**

- 4 the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee endorse the approach that has been taken in the planning of this programme, and
- 5 the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee support the increase in the Capital renewals budget, through the CE Submission process for the Annual Plan 2017/18, to \$3,851,500 for the Waihou zone and \$4,380,000 for the Piako zone.

**Upcoming and Potential Agenda Items**

- 6 the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee support the removal of the old Kopu Bridge as soon as possible for the hydrological benefit to the river and to prevent silt build up at the site.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/26)

**Coromandel Catchment Committee**

Agenda Item 12.8 Doc 10041236

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the Coromandel Catchment Committee (CCC) meeting of 7 March 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/27

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Coromandel Catchment Committee meeting held on 7 March 2017 (Doc 10041236) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at that meeting be noted.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/27)

**Drainage Advisory Subcommittee Meetings February/March 2017**

Agenda Item 13

**Aka Aka Otaua Drainage Advisory Subcommittee**

Agenda Item 13.1 Doc 10015139 and 10112855

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the Aka Aka Otaua Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 10 February and 10 March 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/28

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Aka Aka Otaua Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meetings held on 10 February and 10 March 2017 (Doc 10015139) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at those meetings be noted.

**RECOMMENDED THAT**

**Other Business.**

- 1 THE ENGINEER BE AUTHORISED TO ARRANGE FOR A CONTRACTOR TO CARRY OUT THE LOWERING AND REINSTATEMENT OF THE ABOVE CULVERT.

- 2 THE COMMITTEE APPROVES THE TRIAL OF THE WEED SCREENS AS PROPOSED BY N.I.W.A. AND THAT COUNCIL AND THIS COMMITTEE BE ADVISED OF THE RESULTS AT THE END OF THE 12 MONTHS TRIAL PERIOD.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/28)

### Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee

Agenda Item 13.2 Doc 10160034

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 27 March 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/29

#### RESOLVED THAT

- 1 the report of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting held on 27 March 2017 (Doc 10160034) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at those meetings be noted.

#### RECOMMENDED THAT

##### Drain Planting Trials – Status Report 3

- 1 monitoring of nitrogen and sediment levels before, during and after the establishment of trial site 4 be reported back to the next meeting.

##### Changes to the Methodology of Allocating Corporate Business and General Drainage Costs within the Land Drainage Activity

- 2 the change to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage subdivision costs to each drainage area is endorsed on the basis of individual drainage area operating costs as a proportion of the total operating costs per drainage area.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/29)

### Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee

Agenda Item 13.3 Doc 10160034

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 13 March 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/30

#### RESOLVED THAT

- 1 the report of the Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting held on 13 March 2017 (Doc 10160034) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at those meetings be noted.

#### RECOMMENDED THAT

##### Proposed Changes to the Methodology of Allocating Corporate Business and General Drainage Costs within the Land Drainage Activity

- 1 the Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee endorse a change to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage subdivision costs to each drainage area. The basis to be: Operating expenditure per individual drainage area as a proportion of the total operating costs per subcommittee area.

**Ruawaro Central Drainage Area – Proposed Change to the Management Basis**

- 2 the Subcommittee approve in principle to 'mothball' the Ruawaro Central drainage area and require the reserve balance to reach zero.

**Vacancy on Subcommittee for Representation of Kaawa and Orton Drainage Areas**

- 3 the vacancy created by the retirement of Alf Harwood not be filled until the outcome of the Subcommittee review is completed.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/30)

**Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee**

Agenda Item 13.4 Doc 10114259

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 20 March 2017.

Cr Stu Husband moved/Cr Stu Kneebone seconded

ICM17/31

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report of the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting held on 20 March 2017 (Doc 10114259) be received.
- 2 the resolutions made at those meetings be noted.

**RECOMMENDED THAT****Fencourt and Hautapu Financial status – March 2017**

- 1 staff undertake to identify and discuss all historic expenses from 2011 onwards for the Fencourt and Hautapu subdivisions with the Drainage Representative to identify where the debt was originally incurred.
- 2 Rates for Fencourt remain as per the provisions of the 2015-25 Long Term Plan.
- 3 Rates for Hautapu be increased to \$65,000 in the 2017/18 Annual Plan.
- 4 Rating calculations for Fencourt and Hautapu in the 2018-28 Long Term Plan be based on reaching a zero reserve balance by year 4 of that Plan (2022).

**Reserve funds structure within the Land Drainage programmes**

- 5 the end of year financial reports presented to the drainage advisory subcommittees have the net value of accumulated depreciation identified and reported separately.
- 6 the minimum "operating reserve" for each drainage area be based around 50% of the annual budgeted total expenditure as presently exists.
  - a For areas with infrastructural assets the minimum operating reserve be calculated on annual total expenditure excluding the amount of annual depreciation. This reserve would be identified separately to the amount of accumulated depreciation.
- 7 the Waikato Central Drainage advisory subcommittee endorse this initiative.

**Proposed changes to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage costs within the Land Drainage activity**

- 8 the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory subcommittee endorse a change to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage subdivision costs to each drainage area. The basis to be on the Operating Cost per individual drainage area as a proportion of the total operating costs per subcommittee area.

The motion was put and carried (ICM17/31)

Meeting closed at 12.39pm

**Extract from the minutes of a meeting of Waikato Regional Council on 27  
April 2017**

\* \* \* \* \*

*Return to meeting of Council 27 April 2017*

Minutes of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee – 13 April 2017

Cr Kneebone highlighted the following points:

- A number of apologies were received for the meeting due to the projected weather event, members were advised not to travel. Cr White noted that she would have attended had she known the meeting was still to be held.
- Of the Section B recommendations the Committee considered, only one was slightly re-worded with the support of the West Coast Catchment Chair and that was the recommendation with respect to the moratorium on the sale of whitebait. It was noted that it was appropriate all parties worked together to improve fishery

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted:

- The West Coast Catchment Committee had met with a workgroup and discussed budget increases that were to come through the Annual Plan and the Long Term Plan. The discussion could be returned to council should the Committee wish to review the matter at their next meeting 23 May 2017.
- It was provided for Councillors that the workshop did not represent all members of the committee and the preferred option had not be approved by the Committee only those who had attended the workshop. There was concern that the opinion of the workgroup would be provided to Council for the Annual Plan hearing and deliberations meeting 8 May 2017 without the support of the Committee meeting on 23 May 2017.
- Council would set the rates on 7 June, which would mean that any discussion of the matter by the Committee on 23 May 2017 would be reported to Council to support the decision making process.
- It was proposed that the recommendation with respect to Canadian Geese reflect eradication rather than control. It was provided that the determination of the level of action for the pest would be better able to be determined by Council through the review of the Regional Pest Management Plan.
- The recent weather events had tested the infrastructure of Council's assets in the Waihou Piako and Lower Waikato. The events required a lot of work from staff and it was noted that the assets had largely worked to design standards. A councillor sought a briefing to understand the issues within the Waihou area where there was still water laying in the worst hit areas, even though the assets had "worked as they were supposed to".
- It was acknowledged that a briefing was being prepared and would be provided as soon as practical for councillors. It was noted that the scheme was dated and there had no doubt been a number of changes that would affect the scheme since it was designed and built. It was provided that it was timely to review the scheme and noted that it was a wider community concern and more than just the Kopuatai Peat Dome.

- Staff were commended on the work done and the high levels of communication maintained throughout the weather events.
- With respect to the recommendation from Upper Waikato, it was noted that the reference to receiving information on incidents and responses was not specific details but a statistical report with number and general areas. Further the Committee had indicated they would have liked the opportunity to have input into the proposed Terms of Reference for the Catchment Committees. It was provided that there would be a mid-term review for Committees and the Terms of Reference could form part of that review at that time.
- The recommendation from the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee on the suggested removal of the Kopu Bridge had been from a member within the meeting and was not supported by any scientific evidence to show concern or issues with the hydrology in the area.

Cr Kneebone moved/Cr Husband seconded.

WRC17/94

1. **THAT the report of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee held 13 April 2017 be received.**
2. **THAT the decisions in Section A of the report be noted.**
3. **THAT the recommendations contained in Section B of the report be adopted.**

**Regional Pest Management Plan Review**

**THAT the control of Canadian Geese be considered as part of the Regional Pest Management Plan Review.**

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 03 02 36

**Date:** 14 June 2017

**From:** Director - Integrated Catchment Management

**Subject:** Issues/Actions from Integrated Catchment Management Meetings

**Section A**      **A (Committee has delegated authority to make a decision)**

## 1. Purpose

The purpose is to report back on actions and issues discussed from the previous Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting held on 13 April 2017.

## 2.0 Recommendation





That the report 'Issues/Actions from Integrated Catchment Management Meetings' (Doc# 3266517 dated 14 June 2017) be received for information.

## 3.0 Report back

This report provides the Integrated Catchment Management Committee members with a process for tracking matters raised at subcommittee meetings. Tables 1a and 1b list both resolutions and matters arising and issues raised from previous meetings that are being tracked over time.

*Clare Crickett*  
*Director, Integrated Catchment Management*

### Key:

	Completed
	In Progress according to plan
	Issues exist but on track
	Requires attention

## 4.0 Matters arising

Table 1a below is a summary of the key matters raised at the last committee meeting and the actions that have followed.

Date	Item	Matters Arising	Actions	Status	Responsible
13/04/2017	Drain cleaning	Staff would look into the extent of drain cleaning that could be undertaken on a permitted activity basis and provide that information to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.	Staff have prepared an information paper to set out council's policy and rules in relation to drain clearance which is being presented at the 22 June ICMC.	In progress according to plan	Peter Roberts
13/04/2017	Biosecurity	Further information will be provided to Catchment and Drainage Committees on biosecurity issues to be discussed in the upcoming LTP.	A list of biosecurity issues being raised through the LTP has been provided to all Catchment and Drainage Committees - refer Doc# 10326585 "Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review"	In progress according to plan	Patrick Whaley
13/04/2017	Council	Recommended to Council that the control of Canadian Geese be considered as part of the Regional Pest Management Plan Review.	Staff are aware of the recommendation and will gather information to enable discussion through the upcoming Regional Pest Management Plan review and LTP.	Issues exist but on track	Patrick Whaley
13/04/2017	Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 24 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 The Council documents setting out the incident triage process be made available to Upper Waikato Catchment Committee by email prior to its next meeting.</p> <p>2 The Upper Waikato Catchment Committee be informed at the next meeting whether Council staff can provide the Committee with a report on numbers of incidents, and response actions in each case.</p> <p>3 The Integrated Catchment Management Committee indicate to the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee whether it believes the Review of the Catchment and Drainage Committees had been sufficiently:</p> <p>⊗forward thinking; and</p> <p>⊗substance rather than process focused;</p> <p>so as to adequately support the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee to add the level of value necessary given its functions.</p> <p>4 The Upper Waikato Catchment Committee develop a vision as a reference point moving forward.</p> <p>5 The concept proposal in the Whirinaki Arm Restoration Project and the resourcing to undertake the next step of scoping and strategy development is endorsed.</p> <p>6 The Integrated Catchment Committee seek feedback from the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee on the proposed approach to the 'Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan'.</p> <p>7 That the business case to expand the Council's possum control operations in the South Waikato, through the Long Term Plan, is endorsed.</p>	<p>Recommendations 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 completed. Recommendation 3 and recommendation 4 (in part) will be addressed in the ICM Workshop on the review of the committee structure.</p> <p>Recommendation 4 will also be addressed as part of the lite review of the Upper Waikato Zone Plan scheduled for 2017/18.</p>	In progress according to plan	Anne McLeod
13/04/2017	Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting of 1 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 The Integrated Catchment Committee seek feedback from the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee on the proposed approach to the 'Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan'.</p> <p>2 That the business case to expand the Council's possum control operations in the in the Lake Taupō Catchment, through the Long Term Plan, is endorsed.</p> <p>3 An additional \$30,000 is allocated from the Lake Taupō reserves to the catchment maintenance budget to support the 2016-17 works programme.</p>		Completed	Anne McLeod
13/04/2017	Meeting of Waipa Catchment Committee on 16 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 Rachel Barton be appointed as the Chair of the Waipa Catchment Committee.</p> <p>2 the proposed approach as outlined in the report 'Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan' is supported.</p> <p>3 the business case to expand the Council's possum control operations in the Rangitoto and Hauhangaroa ranges in the Waikato, through the up-coming Long Term Plan, is endorsed.</p>	<p>1. Confirmed by Council at its meeting on 27 April 2017.</p> <p>3. Business case being developed through discussion for the LTP</p>	Completed	Patrick Whaley
13/04/2017	Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 31 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 Support is provided for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the proposal that the construction of the Bell Road stop bank is brought forward into the 2016/2017 financial year; with approved financial expenditure of \$220,000 to be forecasted into the Lower Waikato Capital Renewals programme, as part of the fourth quarter forecasting round.</li> </ul> <p>2 A public forum is established at the commencement of each meeting of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee, allowing a period of 30 minutes for members of the public to speak to that Committee on matters that fall within its terms of reference.</p>	<p>1. Bell Road is integrated into current Capital Renewals Stopbank programme.</p> <p>2. Future Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meetings will now have Public Forum included in Agenda.</p>	Completed	Matthew Davis
13/04/2017	West Coast Catchment Committee meeting of 8 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 in relation to the report 'Annual Plan 2017-18 Budget Increases':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- staff determine all funding options and combinations including the rate impacts for each and report back by email to all West Coast Catchment Committee Members who will provide feedback; and</li> </ul> <p>⊗Following this, staff work with a working group of the West Coast Catchments Committee made up of Mike Moss, Fred Lichtwark, Rob Jolly, Mark Smyth, Deb Pilkington and Maxine Moana-Tuwahangi to determine the preferred option and reasons; and</p> <p>⊗the working group recommend the preferred option is approved at the West Coast Catchment Committee meeting scheduled for 23 May 2017 for recommendation to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.</p> <p>2 the Council work with other agencies to better preserve and protect the wild whitebait fishery in the West Coast catchments, including the investigation of appropriate mechanisms such as the imposition of a moratorium on commercial sale.</p>	<p>1. Completed. A workshop was held with the committee which presented three funding options. A recommendation was made to remain with the proposed targeted rate increase (option 1). This was ratified in the Annual Plan 2017/18 deliberations.</p> <p>2. In progress.</p>	In progress according to plan	Matthew Davis

## 4.0 Matters arising

Table 1a below is a summary of the key matters raised at the last committee meeting and the actions that have followed.

Date	Item	Matters Arising	Actions	Status	Responsible
13/04/2017	Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 23 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 Council initiate a project to compile an online meta database that lists databases held by Council that identifies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the data</li> <li>-the purpose of the data</li> <li>-the collection period</li> <li>-frequency of collection agency</li> <li>-restrictions on access</li> <li>-how to request information.</li> </ul> <p>2 An article be placed in the 'Your Waikato' publication in 2017 to raise the profile of the Catchment Committees.</p>		In progress according to plan	Matthew Davis
13/04/2017	Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee meeting of 17 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 the membership of the Chair of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee to the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee is reinstated.</p> <p>2 in relation to the 'Komata Stream Service Level Review Options Report' that:</p> <p>Option 1 – Maintaining the existing assets at current level of service, be implemented based on Council's stop bank prioritisation programme.</p> <p>Option 2- Include non-asset features downstream of SH26, be considered as the preferred option for detailed investigation and implementation.</p> <p>3 the approach that has been taken in planning the programme in the report 'Annual Plan 2017/18 Capital Renewals' is endorsed.</p> <p>4 The increase in the capital renewals budget, through the CE Submission process for the Annual Plan 2017/18, to \$3,851,500 for the Waihou zone and \$4,380,000 for the Piako zone, is supported.</p> <p>5 Support if provided for the removal of the old Kopu Bridge as soon as possible for the hydrological benefit to the river and to prevent silt build up at the site.</p>	Report approved and staff are implementing options recommended by committee.	In progress according to plan	Adam Munro
13/04/2017	Aka Aka Otatau Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 10 February and 10 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 The engineer be authorized to arrange for a contractor to carry out the lowering and reinstatement of Rasmussen's culvert.</p> <p>2 The trial of the weed screens as proposed by the National Institute of Weather and Atmospheric Research is approved, and the Aka Aka Otatau Drainage Advisory Subcommittee is advised of the results at the end of the 12 month period.</p>	1. Rasmussens culvert will be completed when weather conditions permit. 2. Weedbooms have been installed as a part of the trials	In progress according to plan	Matthew Davis
13/04/2017	Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 27 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 Monitoring of nitrogen and sediment levels before, during and after the establishment of trial site 4 be reported back to the next meeting.</p> <p>2 The change to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage subdivision costs to each drainage area is endorsed on the basis of individual drainage area operating costs as a proportion of the total operating costs per drainage area.</p>	<p>1. It has been determined that another site will provide more appropriate opportunities for accessing nitrogen and sediment levels and is currently underway. This action is now closed.</p> <p>2. The change to methodology have been approved by council and included in the Annual Plan 2017/18.</p>	Completed	Adam Munro
13/04/2017	Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 13 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 A change to the methodology of allocating corporate business and general drainage subdivision costs to each drainage area is endorsed on the basis of operating expenditure per individual drainage area as a proportion of the total operating costs per subcommittee area.</p> <p>2 The 'mothballing' of the Ruawaro Central drainage area and requirement that the reserve balance to reach zero is approved.</p> <p>3 That the vacancy created by the retirement of Alf Harwood not be filled until the outcome of the Subcommittee review is completed.</p>	All in hand. Financial implications will be implemented in the up coming financial year	In progress according to plan	Matthew Davis
13/04/2017	Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 20 March 2017	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT</p> <p>1 Staff undertake to identify and discuss all historic expenses from 2011 onwards for the Fencourt and Hautapu subdivisions with the Drainage Representative to identify where the debt was originally incurred.</p> <p>2 Rates for Fencourt remain as per the provisions of the 2015-25 Long Term Plan.</p> <p>3 Rates for Hautapu be increased to \$65,000 in the 2017/18 Annual Plan.</p> <p>4 Rating calculations for Fencourt and Hautapu in the 2018-28 Long Term Plan be based on reaching a zero reserve balance by year four of that Plan (2022).</p> <p>5 That the end of year financial reports presented to the drainage advisory subcommittees have the net value of accumulated depreciation identified and reported separately.</p>	Financial implications will be implemented in the up coming financial year	Completed	Matthew Davis

## 5.0 Issues and Actions

Table 1b outlines Actions from previous meetings

16/02/2017	Council	<p>RECOMMENDED THAT the agreement "Maintenance Management Agreement Hauraki Rail Trail including Kopu to Kaiua Cycling and Walking Trail" be approved for signing.</p>	Awaiting Hauraki District Council signoff and then agreement will progress through appropriate signing channels	Completed	Adam Munro
16/02/2017	Asset management - Current Activity and Emerging Issues	The report be forwarded to Catchment Committees for their consideration, with recommendations on behalf of their communities to come back to ICM Committee.	This report has been provided to the Lower Waikato, Waihou-Piako, Coromandel and Drainage Committees and will go to the Taupo and Thames Valley Drainage Committees next round.	Issues exist but on track	Matthew /Anne/Adam
16/02/2017	Review of Catchment and Drainage Committees	I was agreed that proposed meeting dates until the end of 2017 would be circulated to Catchment Committee members.		Completed	Democracy Services

## 4.0 Matters arising

Table 1a below is a summary of the key matters raised at the last committee meeting and the actions that have followed.

Date	Item	Matters Arising	Actions	Status	Responsible
15/12/2016	Council	<p><b>Meeting date 15 December 2016</b></p> <p>THAT pursuant to Clause 30, Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, Waikato Regional Council adopts the:</p> <p>a. Committee Structure 2016-2019 Triennium (Doc#9607392), and</p> <p>b. Terms of Reference 2016-2019 Triennium (Doc#8781464) incorporating the amended Terms of Reference for the Hearings Appointment Subcommittee and CE Employment and Remuneration Committee as tabled.</p> <p>THAT an effectiveness review of the catchment committees and drainage advisory subcommittees be undertaken before the next appointment process for community representatives.</p>	Process proposed to ICMC, endorsed, and approved by council	In progress according to plan	Clare Crickett
15/10/14	Lake Taupo Catchment Committee	<p><b>Meeting date 7 August</b></p> <p>THAT the Integrated Catchment Management Committee supports the recommendation that Council investigate the mechanisms for the delivery of the Strategic Planning Framework (the Tongariro River Integrated Catchment Management Strategy).</p>	At a meeting in December 2016, members of the Turangitukua Environment Committee confirmed that they will be developing a plan for the Tongariro River. The members clarified that the timing, nature and scope of this work is Turangitukua's decision. Support for Turangitukua to undertake this work is signalled in the proposed zone plan for Lake Taupo scheduled for ICM Committee approval at its June meeting. Once the zone plan has been adopted, this action will be complete.	Issues exist but on track	Anne McLeod
26/11/15	Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee	THAT staff report back to the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee with an assessment of what is happening in each of the subdivisions in terms of reserve funding.	Currently in progress. Outcome and recommendation will be reported back to a future subcommittee meeting. This has been delayed by Finance until the infrastructural asset revaluation project is complete.	Awaiting finance support to complete.	Adam Munro
12/08/15	Aka Aka Otatau Meeting Minutes	Concern was raised about the cost and effectiveness of fish friendly floodgates and pump stations. Work is underway to assess this. Once investigated and reviewed a report will come to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee on the issue within 12 months.	A report by NIWA and Waikato-Tainui was presented to the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee in September 2015 about a trial of fish friendly floodgates and a trial in the Aka Aka area (a WRA grant funded project). A further project with a duration of approximately 12 months will examine issues and options around reducing native fish mortality rates around pump stations and their operation.	Issues exist but on track	Matthew Davis

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee

## 22 June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 03 04 08  
**Date:** 6 June 2017  
**To:** Chief Executive Officer  
**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management  
**Subject:** ICM Groups of Activities – Financial Status Report to 31 May 2017  
**Section:** A (Committee has delegated authority to make decision)

---

### 1. Purpose

The purpose is to report on the financial status of programmes and activities that fall within the scope of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee.

This report covers the 2016/2017 year for the period 1 July 2016 to 31 May 2017.

### 2. Recommendation

That the report 'ICM Groups of Activities – Financial Status Report to 31 May 2017' (Doc # 9812261 dated 6 June 2017) be received for information.

### 3. Commentary

**Operational expenditure** – The operational programme is on budget being within 1% of forecast spend for this stage of the year.

**Capital expenditure** – As indicated at earlier meetings, it has been a challenging construction season as a result of prolonged wet weather conditions and contractor availability issues. At the third financial quarter forecast round, it was clear that the full programme could not be completed this year. Council approved a re-forecasted work programme which will result in a number of capital projects being carried over into the next financial year.

The capital programme is currently 10% behind forecasts to end of May but significant expenditure is expected in the final month of June.

The ICM financial status for the period 1 July 2016 to 31 May 2017 is summarised in the Table to follow.

---

*Bruce Peploe*  
Manager Business and Technical Services

---

*Clare Crickett*  
Director Integrated Catchment Management

## 4. Financial summaries to 31 May 2017

### Integrated Catchment Management Committee

17-May

	YTD Actual	YTD Budget (Revised)	Variance	FY Budget (Revised)	FY Budget Ann Plan	% Spent
<b>Expenditure Summary by Activity Area/Zone</b>						
Lake Taupo	1,019,522	1,180,033	160,511	1,170,085	1,549,086	87%
Upper Waikato	667,974	698,430	30,456	817,081	958,351	82%
Central Waikato	647,132	798,777	151,646	1,058,469	1,185,469	61%
Waipa	2,362,110	2,691,455	329,345	3,798,314	2,996,314	62%
Lower Waikato	6,901,377	6,278,923	(622,454)	7,036,221	6,598,971	98%
Lower Waikato Main Channel	261,458	305,549	44,091	329,394	336,394	79%
Coromandel	1,662,993	1,723,113	60,120	1,948,625	1,700,391	85%
CMA Works and Services	788,926	922,831	133,905	1,012,214	641,214	78%
West Coast	952,980	916,399	(36,580)	1,247,425	1,166,175	76%
Waihou	5,546,347	6,017,731	471,384	6,487,925	6,229,458	85%
Piako	4,221,047	3,514,821	(706,226)	3,842,291	3,543,831	110%
Drainage	1,847,530	1,950,221	102,691	2,176,818	2,130,818	85%
Integrated Catchment Services	8,226,883	8,619,835	392,952	11,130,726	11,279,591	74%
ICM Special Projects	242,773	472,463	229,690	425,997	619,503	57%
Community Safety	1,131,110	1,007,214	(123,896)	1,127,348	1,088,224	100%
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>36,480,162</b>	<b>37,097,796</b>	<b>617,635</b>	<b>43,608,933</b>	<b>42,023,790</b>	<b>84%</b>
<b>Revenue</b>						
General Rate	8,945,903	8,945,903	0	9,760,908	9,759,842	(92)%
Targeted Rates - Schemes	18,858,599	18,894,334	(35,735)	20,613,365	20,613,365	(91)%
Targeted Rates - Scheme Loans	589,460	589,858	(398)	643,527	643,527	(92)%
Targeted Rates - Natural Heritage	905,539	907,574	(2,035)	990,159	1,003,693	(91)%
Targeted Rates - Biosecurity	5,531,044	5,527,317	3,726	6,030,238	5,983,143	(92)%
Government Grant	99,130	53,240	45,890	283,043	283,043	(35)%
Direct Charges	296,089	217,289	78,800	667,826	699,490	(44)%
Interest	27,957	13,313	14,644	13,313	0	(210)%
Royalties	91,586	90,000	1,586	120,000	120,000	(76)%
Rental income	562,569	653,178	(90,609)	670,479	670,479	(84)%
Other Income	454,915	106,446	348,469	1,272,196	294,500	(36)%
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>36,362,791</b>	<b>35,998,453</b>	<b>364,338</b>	<b>41,065,054</b>	<b>40,071,082</b>	<b>(89)%</b>
<b>Expenditure Summary by Activity</b>						
Catchment Oversight	3,674,590	3,793,340	118,750	3,756,870	3,818,143	98%
Information and Advice	734,667	718,051	(16,616)	977,454	795,454	75%
Catchment Maintenance	345,307	813,155	467,848	996,488	1,078,758	35%
Catchment New Works	2,494,566	2,970,339	475,774	4,041,814	3,674,815	62%
River Management & Improvement	4,218,634	4,320,602	101,969	4,832,040	4,696,040	87%
Flood Protection	12,604,979	11,039,369	(1,565,611)	12,674,635	11,471,701	99%
LT Foreshore	94,211	114,114	19,903	114,533	198,533	82%
Drainage	1,837,306	1,934,751	97,445	2,159,615	2,113,615	85%
CMA Works and Services	788,926	922,831	133,905	1,012,214	641,214	78%
Biosecurity	5,003,625	5,098,009	94,384	6,975,107	6,982,988	72%
Biodiversity	1,975,330	2,200,998	225,668	2,652,769	2,630,769	74%
Other Project	66,401	147,302	80,901	73,751	153,751	90%
Land Management Advisory Service	1,396,972	1,622,569	225,598	1,830,889	2,107,379	76%
WRC Emergency Management	544,796	474,515	(70,281)	519,249	494,769	105%
Resilient Development	586,315	532,699	(53,615)	608,100	593,455	96%
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>36,366,873</b>	<b>36,702,646</b>	<b>336,022</b>	<b>43,225,529</b>	<b>41,451,386</b>	<b>84%</b>
<b>Interest on Reserve Expense</b>	<b>113,537</b>	<b>395,150</b>	<b>281,613</b>	<b>383,403</b>	<b>572,403</b>	<b>30%</b>
<b>Total Operating Expenditure</b>	<b>36,480,162</b>	<b>37,097,796</b>	<b>617,635</b>	<b>43,608,932</b>	<b>42,023,789</b>	<b>84%</b>
<b>Capital Expenditure Summary</b>						
Lake Taupo	0	95,000	95,000	95,000	95,000	0%
Waipa	166,949	229,940	62,991	210,963	183,963	79%
Lower Waikato	3,892,683	5,009,588	1,116,905	5,861,930	5,508,930	66%
Lower Waikato Main Channel	0	43,457	43,457	19,743	47,743	0%
Coromandel	93,896	0	93,896	321,857	32,857	29%
Waihou	1,355,344	1,269,571	85,773	2,077,000	3,224,000	65%
Piako	2,353,659	2,392,629	38,970	2,952,833	3,736,522	80%
West Coast	31,660	34,970	3,310	34,970	34,970	91%
Drainage	17,782	0	17,782	0	0	n/m
<b>Total Capital</b>	<b>7,911,973</b>	<b>9,075,155</b>	<b>1,163,182</b>	<b>11,574,296</b>	<b>12,863,985</b>	<b>68%</b>

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 75 40 00  
**Date:** 6 June 2017  
**To:** Chief Executive Officer  
**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management  
**Subject:** Waikato Regional Plan rules pertaining to land drainage maintenance  
**Section:** A (Committee has delegated authority to make decision)

---

## 1. Purpose

This report provides a response to a request received from the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee to clarify the rules within the Waikato Regional Plan (WRP) as they relate to activities associated with the maintenance of waterways within land drainage schemes.

## 2. Recommendation

That the report “Waikato Regional Plan rules pertaining to land drainage” (Doc# 10493763 dated 6 June 2017) be received for information.

## 3. Background

The Waikato Regional Council has overall responsibility for managing rivers and streams in the region and is the legal owner, manager and/or operator of a number of significant soil conservation, river management, flood control and land drainage assets.

The Waikato Regional Council’s statutory responsibility for these works is principally via the Land Drainage Act 1908; the Soil Conservation and River Control Act 1941 and the Local Government Act 2002.

The Council’s strategic intent for the land drainage activity is to:

***“Provide land drainage services to safeguard the economic wellbeing of the region.”***

The level of service for the land drainage activity is defined as:

***“Provide reliable water table management on land within drainage [areas] for the purpose of maintaining pastoral production.”***

Effective land drainage is provided by maintaining a land drainage network that allows landowners the ability to manage water table on their properties, and reduces surface flooding resulting from rainfall events.

The land drainage network has been established to an agreed standard and where gravity drainage allows, clears water from the land to avoid damage to pasture. The level of service adopted by Council is to clear ponded water from a 10 year runoff event within three days. The management objective is to maintain existing systems in a sustainable manner.

#### 4. Regulatory Environment

The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) is the principal environmental law that governs the activities associated with waterway maintenance (i.e. discharges to water, use of land, works within the beds of rivers).

The rules framework with the WRP relating to maintenance of waterways can cause confusion due to the complex combinations of differing classifications of waterways and the multiple rules relating to different types of activity (i.e. spraying, mechanical removal of vegetation, removal of accumulated sediment).

ICM carries out a range of work within both artificial and modified/natural watercourses under both resource consents (comprehensive consents that apply to large geographic areas and discrete consents which are associated with specific sites and/or watercourses) and permitted activity rules.

#### 5. Artificial vs. Modified/Natural

The RMA (and therefore the WRP) differentiate between types of waterways – artificial, modified or “natural” and regulates them differently. That is, the rules in the WRP apply differently to watercourses depending on whether they are artificial or modified/natural. It is therefore important to determine the status of the watercourse prior to considering what rules apply.

**Artificial watercourses** – the WRP defines an artificial watercourse as one that contains no natural portions from its confluence with a river or stream to its headwaters and the RMA specifies that artificial watercourses include irrigation canals, water supply races, canals for the supply of water for electricity power generation and farm drainage canals (although this is not an exhaustive list).

An artificial watercourse is completely manmade for its entire length. There is **not** a natural channel or feature at its headwaters. A natural channel could include gully headwaters, especially if there is a continuous flow of water, but should also include channels with ephemeral flows (streams that flow continuously for at least 3 months between March and September, but do not flow all year).

The beds of artificial watercourses are not subject to the RMA – as these types of waterway are not considered “rivers” under the Act. Consequently, any disturbance of them or any structures placed within them are also not governed by the restrictions relating to “rivers” contained within the Act.

The water contained within artificial watercourses is subject to the RMA. Therefore any damming, diversion, discharge of contaminants to water or the taking of water contained within artificial watercourses is governed by rules within the WRP.

**Modified watercourse** - An artificial or modified natural channel that may or may not be on the original watercourse alignment and which has a natural channel/s at its headwaters. These types of waterways have the same legal status as a “river” or “natural” watercourse and therefore activities involving their bed and the water within them are subject to rules within the WRP.

This could include any kind of watercourse (including slightly modified, highly modified, or even manmade) **but it has a natural channel or feature at its headwaters**. As stated above, a natural channel could include gully headwaters, especially perennial flows (streams that have a base flow all year round), but should also

include ephemeral flows (streams that flow continuously for at least 3 months between March and September but do not flow all year). An artificial channel draining a boggy seep in the headwaters of a catchment is not considered a natural channel. However where there are a number of boggy seeps providing a substantial natural flow, this could be determined as the basis of a natural channel in the headwaters of some catchments.

## 6. Summary of WRP Rules

The following table details the applicable permitted activity rules associated with the maintenance of watercourses. Note the list below includes only those rules relevant to typical maintenance activities, there are other rules that apply in the case of existing and new culverts, structures, diversions of water, dams, the taking of water etc.

Maintenance Activity	Type of Watercourse	Relevant Rule
Removal of vegetation – mechanical  Note: excluding within wetlands – the removal of vegetation within wetlands requires a consent, irrespective of the waterway classification.	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but the resultant discharge of sediment to water is subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21.
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.3.9.2
Removal of vegetation - spraying  Note: excluding wetlands, as per above.	Artificial	Permitted 6.2.4.9
	Modified, natural	
Removal of accumulated sediment (disturbance of the bed)	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21
	Modified, natural	Consent is required under rule 4.3.4.4.
Removal of accumulated sediment for the purpose of maintenance of lawfully established structures.	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.3.6.1
Deposition of sediment and vegetation (from mechanical cleaning).  Note: exclusion from placing spoil in wetlands.	Artificial	Permitted 5.2.5.7 – up to 10m <sup>2</sup> in a single location, consent required under rule 3.5.4.6 if cleanings (vegetation and/or silt) is deposited within a wetland.
	Modified, natural	
Erosion control structures	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21.
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.2.15.1
Sand and Gravel extraction – Waihou catchment	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21.
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.3.7.1
Removal of Obstructions (excluding within wetlands)	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21.
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.3.10.1

Existing Lawfully Established Structures (maintenance of)	Artificial	No relevant rules triggered but discharges subject to water quality standards as set out in section 4.2.21.
	Modified, natural	Permitted 4.2.5.1

It is pertinent to note that these activities can be done without a resource consent only if all of the conditions listed in the relevant permitted activity rule/s can be met. If they cannot be met, a consent will be required to undertake the activity. As an example, under rule 4.3.7.1 the extraction of up to 50 m<sup>3</sup> of sand or gravel from the bed of a waterway in the Waihou catchment can only be done if (amongst other things) the extraction does not take place within 20 m of a structure on the bed and the excavated material cannot be stockpiled in the flood plain and the extraction depth cannot exceed 50 cm. If any one of these conditions cannot be met, say the extraction depth needs to be 65 cm, then the activity defaults to rule 4.3.4.4 and a resource consent is required to undertake the works.

## 7. Existing Resource Consents

ICM have been granted a number of resource consents so that core maintenance activities can be undertaken for land drainage, whilst complying with the WRP. These resource consents allow for drain cleaning to re-establish the drainage depth required for effective land drainage by removing bed obstructions - such as accumulated sediment and aquatic plants. These consents also authorise a range of activities for the purposes of river management, erosion control and flood protection. Activities can include placement of rock erosion protection structures, rock and/or vegetation groyne construction, gravel extraction/relocation/management, and obstruction and vegetation removal. The table below details those consents.

Activity	Consent No	Expiry
Silt Removal from beds of natural and modified watercourses within 52 drainage areas	121726 121727	30/06/31
Deposition of sediment and vegetation into Wetlands from land drainage and stream maintenance works	136665	30/06/47
Aka Aka Otua Drainage area - Installation of Erosion control structures	135834	28/02/41
Aka Aka Otua Drainage area - Berm reshaping	137698	30/06/47
Undertake works within river and stream beds in Waipa, Lower Waikato and Central Waikato zones [3 Zones consent]	121848	30/06/47

It is important to note that there are a number of conditions attached to each of these consents. Issues such as notifying key stakeholders, consideration of timing for ecological considerations, sediment management, and mitigation in watercourses with high ecological values need to be addressed prior to undertaking works. These considerations often also apply to permitted activity rules.

The table in Attachment 1 outlines the timing restrictions for Land Drainage activities and has been provided to all drainage chairs in the past (per comm Roger Spooner, Drainage Manager).

## 8. Summary

- Artificial watercourses can be cleaned (removal of accumulated sediment and weeds) without resource consent nor subject to any permitted activity rule provided that the works do not deepen existing or create a new drain within 200 metres of the legal property boundaries of the wetlands listed section 3.7.7 of the WRP.

- In relation to modified (natural) watercourses – consent is required under rule 4.3.4.4 in order to remove accumulated sediment.
- Vegetation cannot be removed from a wetland without a consent (including via spraying).
- In relation to the cleanings from any type of watercourse, the heaps resulting from cleaning a drain can't be more than 10m<sup>3</sup> in any one pile. Consent is required if the cleanings are to be deposited into a wetland.
- Natural/modified watercourses – PA Rule 4.3.9.2 allows for the mechanical removal of vegetation subject to conditions (e.g. timing of works in certain water management classes, suspended solids discharges).
- PA Rule 6.2.4.9 allows for the control of vegetation via agrichemicals subject to conditions.
- PA Rule 4.3.10.1 allows for the removal of obstructions (vegetation, rocks, gravel, sediment, debris) that is obstructing a modified watercourse channel and is likely to cause flooding, erosion etc – subject to conditions. If the conditions of the PA rule cannot be met, then consent is required.
- If in doubt, adopt a precautionary approach and seek advice from our WRC regulatory staff (for external parties) and/or ICM Environmental Compliance staff (for ICM staff, volunteers, Committee members etc.)

Further advice provided in the handout “Farmer’s Guide to Permitted Activities” [Doc#3417607](#).

## 9. Conclusion

The issue of land owners and a lack of knowledge and difficulty in interpretation of the WRP rules relating to maintenance of drains is a common and perennial one. The regulatory framework is complicated and often requires a specialist knowledge to navigate and apply.

Advice and training is provided to ICM staff via ICM internal resources and via RUD to both internal and external customers, as well as a range of publications and resources aimed towards achieving education on this issue.

This paper presents a summarised account of the rules around maintenance activities associated with drainage. The scope of rules is wider than this comparatively narrow focus and it is suggested that a precautionary approach is adopted if there is doubt, and advice sought from WRC staff.

---

*Peter Roberts*  
Senior Environmental Officer

---

*Clare Crickett*  
Director, Integrated Catchment Management

### Attachments:

- Land drainage maintenance table showing permitted times for cleaning of modified natural watercourses Doc# 2476624

**Attachment 1: Land drainage maintenance table showing permitted times for cleaning of modified natural watercourses (WRC Doc#2476624).**

Activity	Jan	Feb	Mar	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec
<b>Desilting</b> (Resource Consent No.'s 121726 & 121727)												
• All sites (dabbling Duck)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
• Significant Indigenous fisheries & fish habitat	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
• Trout fisheries and trout habitat	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
• Potential Inanga spawning habitat	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Note: Specific Consent conditions still apply.												
<b>Vegetation Removal</b> (PA rule 4.3.9.2)												
• No significant fishery	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
• Significant Indigenous fisheries & fish habitat	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
• Trout fisheries and trout habitat	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓
Note: Permitted Activity rules still apply												
<b>Deposition into Wetlands</b> (RC No 136365)												
Category A - Modified							-	-	-	-	-	-
- Artificial	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Category B - Modified							-	-	-	-	-	-
- Artificial	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-

**Key**

- ✓ Can do works in this area, for this activity
- ✗ No works
- No works because of dabbling duck restrictions

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – to be received

**File No:** 03 02 32

**Date:** 7 June 2017

**To:** Chief Executive Officer

**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management

**Subject:** Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review

**Section** A (under delegation for the information of Council)

## 1. Purpose

The purpose of this report is to:

- 1) To provide the committee with an overview of the issues that are impacting the flood protection and control works, integrated catchment services, and regional hazards and emergency response activities, in lieu on further consideration as part of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan
- 2) To provide the committee with an overview of the feedback provided by catchment committees on these issues; and
- 3) To alert the committee to other issues that may require attention in the future, but are unlikely to require specific consideration at this point in time.

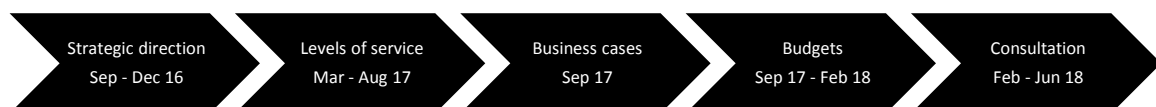
## 2. Recommendation

That the report “Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review” (Doc # 10586741 dated 7 June 2017) be received for information.

## 3. Background

Every 3 years council reviews and prepares a Long Term Plan (LTP), a strategic planning document which describes the activities council will provide and fund to achieve desired community outcomes over a 10 year period. It is the organisation’s key public accountability and planning document and demonstrates value for money for the service we deliver, which for the most part means value for rates and fees.

The process for developing this document is as follows:



#### 4. Progress update

Council has completed the review of the Waikato Regional Council Strategic Direction, and will use this to review the levels of service it provides.

The next stage in the development of the LTP is the review of the levels of service. This review will include:

- The identification of issues that are currently (or may in the future) have an impact on council activities
- The consideration of options to address the issues identified, particularly those issues that require a change to one or more levels of service; and
- Where required, the preparation of business cases to support changes to Council levels of service.

In lieu of broader council consideration of the issues impacting the various services, the following section provides an overview of the issues that are currently impacting (or are expected to start impacting) the following groups of activities:

- a. Flood protection and control works
  - Flood protection
  - River management
- b. Integrated catchment management
  - Catchment planning and management
  - Biosecurity
  - Biodiversity
  - Land management advisory services
- c. Regional hazards and emergency response
  - Waikato Regional Council emergency management
  - Resilient development

## 5. Level of service review



The following section provides:

- An overview of activities, the services they provide, and the way performance is currently measured (as defined by the 2015-2025 LTP).
- For each activity, a description of any issues that need to be addressed as part of the development of the 2018-2028 LTP. Some are region-wide issues, some are specific to one or more zones.
- A description of other issues that may need to be addressed in the future.
- Feedback received from catchment committees on these issues.

### 5.1 Flood protection and control works

#### 5.1.1 Current levels of service

The following table provides an overview of the activities provided for by “flood protection and control works”, the levels of service currently provided.

Activity	Level of service	Measure
Flood protection	To provide the standard of flood protection agreed with communities (as set out in zone plans and associated documents).	MANDATORY: Major flood protection and control works are maintained, repaired and renewed to the key standards defined in the local authority’s relevant planning documents.
River management	To achieve a balance between maintaining channel capacity, channel stability and environmental values in the management of priority rivers and streams in each management zone.	95 % of river instability enquiries are responded to within 3 days, and appropriate actions taken on a prioritisation basis. Proactive monitoring of priority rivers and streams on a cyclical basis as per the agreed work programme.
Land drainage	To provide reliable water table management in land within drainage schemes for the purpose of maintaining pastoral production.	Less than 5 reported incidences where it takes more than 3 days to remove surface water after events up to a 10 % AEP.

### 5.1.2 Region-wide issues to be addressed by this LTP

The following issues have been identified as currently impacting or having the potential impact on these activities across the Waikato Region:

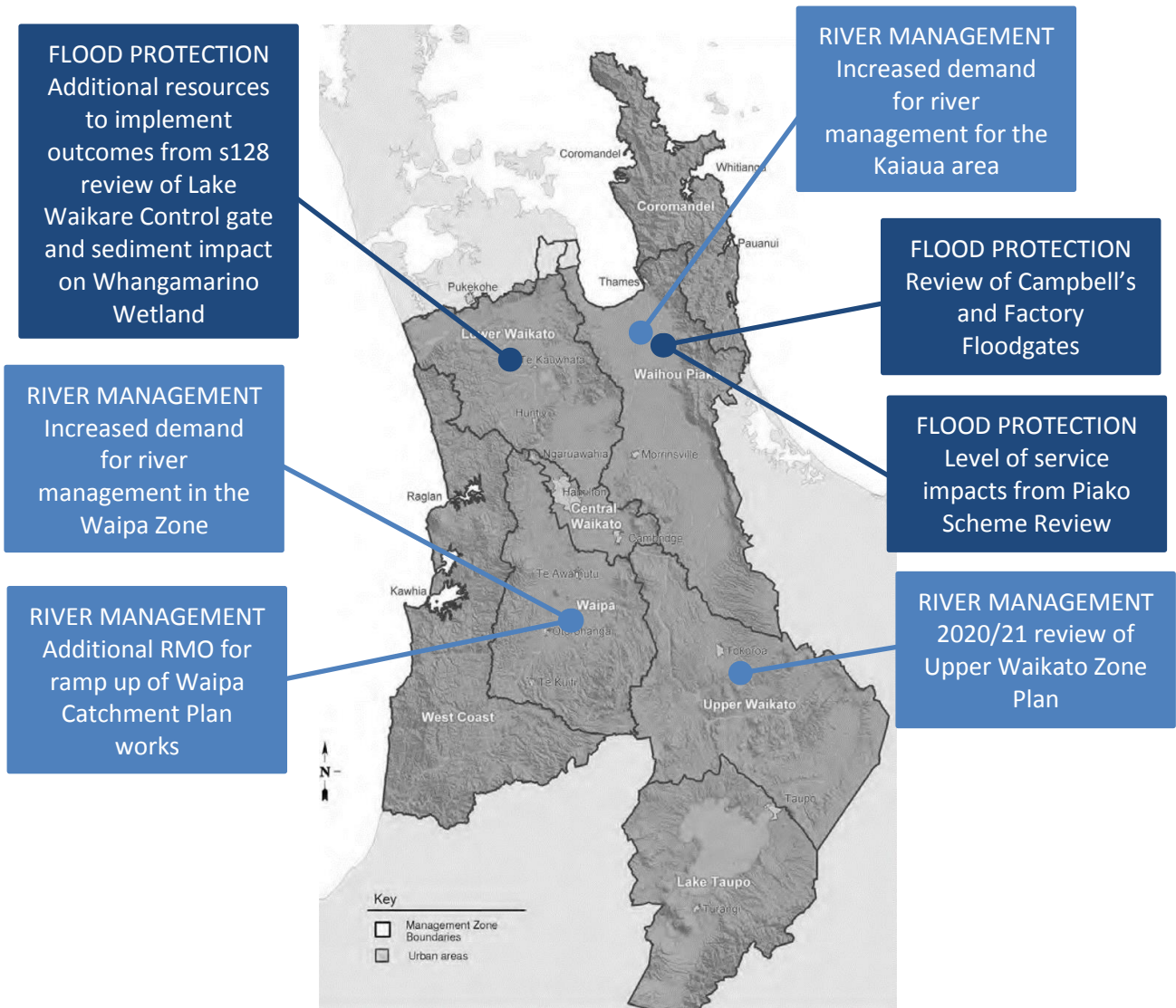
- a. Existing costs associated with FLOOD PROTECTION, RIVER MANAGEMENT and LAND DRAINAGE activities are increasing (e.g. earthworks, health and safety, and environmental compliance).

To date, these additional costs have been able to be absorbed through a reallocation of zone budgets and the use of zone reserves. However, this approach is not sustainable, with ongoing cost escalation threatening the performance measures agreed for these activities.

- b. Asset management planning is currently under review, including the review of the Regional Infrastructure Strategy, the development of a Regional Asset Management Plan and a revaluation of assets. The outcome of these pieces of work is expected to increase the cost to maintain and renew infrastructure within the FLOOD PROTECTION and LAND DRAINAGE activities.
- c. There are changing expectations regarding the sustainability and environmental performance of the FLOOD PROTECTION, RIVER MANAGEMENT and LAND DRAINAGE activities, including the desire to leverage other benefits from infrastructure maintenance and renewal. As a consequence, it is expected that the cost to deliver these activities will increase.

### 5.1.3 Zone-specific issues to be addressed by this LTP

In addition to the above region-wide issues, the following zone-specific issues have also been identified:



## 5.2 Integrated catchment management

### 5.2.1 Current levels of service

The following table provides an overview of the activities provided for by “integrated catchment management”, the levels of service currently provided.

Activity	Level of service	Measures
Biosecurity	To control plant and animal pests within the Waikato region to maintain and enhance biodiversity and protect agricultural productivity and community health.	<p>Less than 5 % RTC for every 100 traps set for possum operations (ground control).</p> <p>Less than 3 % RTC for every 100 traps set for possum operations (aerial control).</p> <p>Reducing trend in the number of known sites for each species of eradication pest plant.</p>
Biodiversity	Work with partners, stakeholders and community to maintain and enhance indigenous biodiversity.	<p>Improving trend in habitat condition score of sites under active management.</p> <p>Increasing trend in the number of tui in Hamilton.</p> <p>Projects funded through the Environmental Initiatives Fund and Natural Heritage Fund achieve milestones as per funding agreement.</p>
Land management advisory services	<p>To collaborate with other agencies and the people of the Waikato to support projects that deliver economic, environmental and social outcomes for the region.</p> <p>Work with partners, stakeholders and community to promote land management practices to improve environmental and agricultural sustainability.</p>	<p>30 % of people (as surveyed) participate in extension programmes organised by WRC and make a change in agricultural practice within 12 months of attendance.</p>
Catchment planning and management	Work with partners, stakeholders and community to improve soil conservation and water quality.	<p>Identify priority sub-catchments and sites for soil conservation and remediation.</p> <p>Reducing area of unstable land in Waipa priority 1 catchments.</p> <p>70 % of sampled catchment scheme works are maintained in effective condition to the standards set out in the zone plans.</p>

## 5.2.2 Region-wide issues to be addressed by this LTP

The following issues have been identified as currently impacting or having the potential impact on these activities across the Waikato Region:

- a. Existing costs associated with **BIOSECURITY** and **CATCHMENT PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT** activities are increasing (e.g. earthworks, health and safety, and environmental compliance).
- b. The Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP), which provides provides the foundation for the **BIOSECURITY** activity, needs to be reviewed during the first two years of the LTP to take account of any level of service changes and to ensure alignment with the National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015. The process to review this plan will require significant additional resources.
- c. The change in focus of the national TB management programme means a reduction in the amount of possum control in the Waikato region of approximately 400,000 hectares over the next 2 years. This area contains some of the regions special areas of biodiversity and sensitive catchments that have benefited hugely from 30 years of pest management.

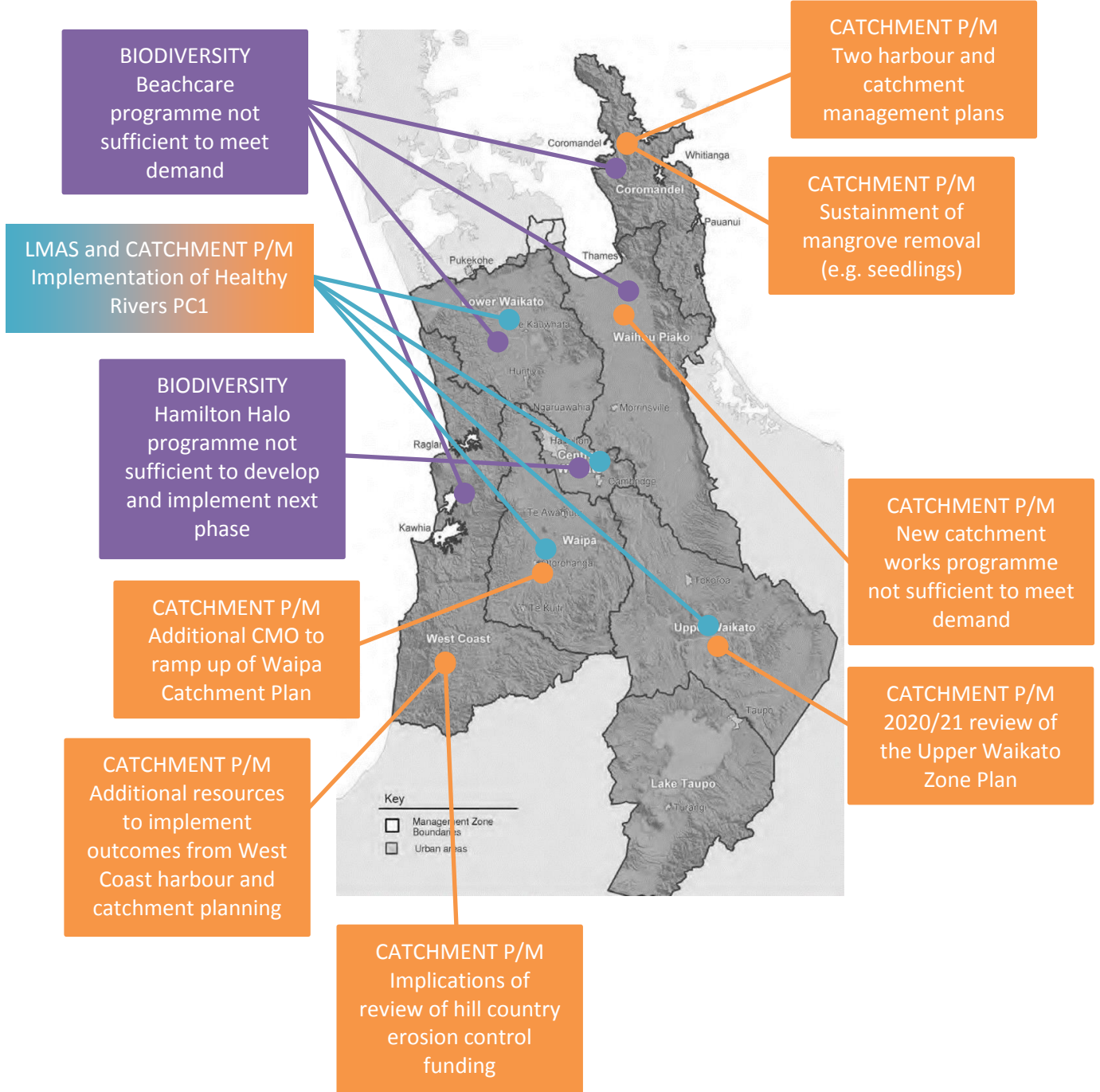
The withdrawal of national funding reduces the resources available to support the level of service provided by the **BIOSECURITY** activity, along with the consequential benefits to the **BIODIVERSITY** activity.

- d. The current funding provided by the **BIOSECURITY** activity for marine biosecurity is focused on containment of the Mediterranean fanworm infestation in the Coromandel harbour (discovered in 2013). The infestation has unfortunately now spread beyond the capability of WRC and MPI to manage. Managing invasive marine pests is notoriously difficult and in recognition of this NRC, AC, BOPRC, HBRC and GDC with support from MPI are proposing to develop an upper north island Marine Pathway Management Plan.
- e. The level of resourcing provided by the **BIOSECURITY** activity for the Wallaby Management Plan is not sufficient to meet the objectives of the Regional Pest Management Plan and the Dama Wallaby Management Plan of population containment. This operational plan was jointly developed by WRC, Bay of Plenty RC, DOC and MPI.
- f. The level of resourcing currently provided by the **BIOSECURITY** activity for Waikato regions Kauri Dieback programme is not sufficient to support private landowners, work with iwi partners or district councils. Current resourcing for the programme was established prior to kauri dieback being confirmed at multiple sites on the Coromandel. Since this confirmation the community, iwi and stakeholder expectation and engagement requirements have grown beyond what WRC can support. Kauri dieback is a joint programme between NRC, AC, MPI, BOPRC, DOC and MPI.
- g. The level of resourcing provided by the **BIODIVERSITY** activity for coordination and technical support of the Natural Heritage Partnership Programme has increased with the success of the programme. Increased technical advice and support, as well as facilitating information exchange through various networks will be the key to empowering community groups to achieve further biodiversity conservation outcomes.
- h. A new **BIODIVERSITY** programme would help achieve a Predator Free Waikato in partnership with community groups, iwi, DOC and other agencies, in line with Council's declared strategic direction. This would include securing regional funds to augment national contestable funds (at a required 3:1 ratio).

- i. The level of resourcing provided by the **BIODIVERSITY** activity for the management of Priority Biodiversity Sites is insufficient to provide for outcome monitoring in addition to the current level of active management.

### 5.2.3 Zone-specific issues to be addressed by this LTP

In addition to the above region-wide issues, the following zone-specific issues have also been identified:



### 5.3 Regional hazards and emergency response

#### 5.3.1 Current levels of service

The following table provides an overview of the activities provided for by “regional hazards and emergency response”, the levels of service currently provided.

Activity	Level of service	Measures
Waikato Regional Council emergency management	<p>To reduce the environmental impact of marine oil spills by having a safe, coordinated and effective plan in place and maintain an effective readiness to respond.</p> <p>To provide the community with timely flood event information and situational reports and to respond effectively to flood events to lessen the adverse effects.</p> <p>To provide in-kind support to the Waikato CDEM Group to enable the Waikato community to be kept safe and resilient during emergencies.</p>	<p>Marine oil spill planning and response capability is maintained to Maritime NZ audit standards and legislative requirements.</p> <p>90 % of customers are satisfied with the Waikato Regional Council’s flood warning service.</p> <p>Waikato Regional Council provides support to the Waikato CDEM Group in accordance with the service level agreement.</p>

#### 5.3.2 Region-wide issues to be addressed by this LTP

The following issues have been identified as currently impacting or having the potential impact on these activities across the Waikato Region:

- a. There continues to be an increasing demand from the RESILIENT DEVELOPMENT activity for regional hazard information to support other organisations in making their decisions (e.g. territorial authorities through district plans), as well as individual decision making (e.g. property purchase and insurance). This issue is particularly relevant to coastal hazards.
- b. There is a concern about the lack of depth of resourcing available to support the WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT activity.

## 5.4 Other issues that may require attention in the future

Finally, the following emerging issues have been identified in relation to the activities covered by this report that may need to be considered subsequent to the current LTP development process:

- A number of Treaty of Waitangi settlements are current being progress that may require a review in the way that these activities are delivered.
- The impacted by the effects of climate change, including increasing rainfall intensity and rising sea levels.
- Changing land use and the growth of urban centres (including Auckland), particularly in relation to the level of service provided by infrastructure.
- Changing requirements in relation to the management of water.
- The impact of the Healthy Rivers Plan Change 1, the final detail of which is pending decisions that are not due until October 2018.
- The rollout of healthy rivers plan changes to other parts of the Waikato Region.
- The outcomes from the scheduled review of the Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan.
- The ongoing review of zone plans, along with the resourcing of existing zone plan priorities.
- An increasing need to review river schemes to improve environmental indicators (e.g. fish friendly assets) and the impact that this may have on overall scheme sustainability.
- The 5-yearly cycle for the review of flood protection schemes.
- The potential for the resource consents that authorise these activities to be reviewed under Section 128 of the Resource Management Act.

## 6. Catchment committee and drainage liaison subcommittees

Prior to this paper being prepared, a paper was prepared for each catchment committee and land drainage advisory subcommittee. The purpose of each paper was to provide the committees and subcommittees with a background to the process and introduce the issues that are particularly relevant to the services delivered in the respective catchment.

Each catchment committee was also provided the opportunity to provide feedback on these issues, to inform subsequent Council discussion on the same issues. The following table provides a summary of the feedback that was received. In general, committees as a whole were not in a position to support or oppose the issues raised, but instead were happy to receive further information when available (e.g. following the preparation of business cases). There were however several instances where committees as a whole did express support for the issues raised, either through discussion (refer to respective committee minutes) or through formal resolutions (refer to table below).

Committee or subcommittee	Feedback
Lake Taupo Catchment	Support for the need to develop a business case in response to "TB Rolloff" (LTCC17/10).
Upper Waikato Catchment	Support for the need to develop a business case in response to "TB Rolloff" (UWCC17/12 and UWCC17/21). Support the need for a proactive and collaborative approach with landowners (UWCC17/21). Support the continued implementation of the Upper Waikato Zone Plan (UWCC17/21).
Waipa Catchment	Support for the need to develop a business case in response to "TB rolloff" (WaipaC17/8)
Coromandel Catchments	Support the initiative to seek funding from third party sources as they arise in accordance with Zone priorities (CLSC17/17.1). Support seeking additional funding to develop the two new Harbour and Catchment Management Plans as per the WRC Strategic Direction (CLSC17/19.3).
Waikato Central Drainage	Support budgets that ensure, as a minimum, current levels of service are maintained (WCDAS17/26).

## 7. Conclusion

There are a number of issues that are either currently impacting or have the potential to impact the activities that this committee governs. The development of the 2018-2028 Long Term Plan is an opportunity to debate what options are available to address these issues, and agree on how to proceed for the next 10 years (with a particular focus on the next 3 years).

This paper, and the process that it forms part of, provides this committee with the opportunity to engage in these issues and inform the range of Council discussions and decision making that will be occurring over the next year.

---

*Greg Ryan*  
*Principal Advisor*  
*Integrated Catchment Management*

---

*Clare Crickett*  
*Director, Integrated Catchment Management*

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – Decision Required

**File No:** 03 04 08  
**Date:** 9 June 2017  
**To:** Chief Executive Officer  
**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management  
**Subject:** Lake Taupō Zone Plan – June 2017  
**Section:** B (For recommendation to Council)

---

## 1. Purpose

This report seeks the adoption of the zone plan for Lake Taupō prepared by the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee (LTCC).

## 2. Recommendations:

1. That the report “Lake Taupō Zone Plan – June 2017”(Doc# 10583343 dated 7 June 2017) be received; and
2. That the Lake Taupō Zone Plan (Doc # 10360106) be adopted.

## 3. Background

Preparation of the Lake Taupō Zone Plan (Zone Plan) began in 2015/16 when the LTCC ran a series of workshops to develop its vision for the Lake Taupō Zone. The vision that was subsequently adopted by the LTCC is contained in Figure 1 below.

**Vision**

**Taupō –healthy catchment, healthy people.**

Values protecting and restoring the mauri (life force and interconnectedness) of the Taupō Catchment, and ensuring the waters of the Lake Taupō remain drinkable and pristine, by:

- Working together as leaders and kaitiaki/stewards for future generations
- Balancing differing views and values
- Influencing policy and priorities
- Making good decisions - delivering good results

**Figure 1: Vision of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee**

The LTCC has undertaken an extensive and thorough process to preparing its zone plan. Following the development of the Vision in March 2016 the LTCC established a four member zone plan working party (Sue Yerex, Paul Green, Natalie Haines and Jane Penton). This working party was charged with providing feedback

and advice on the various issues/management options for inclusion in the zone plan. The issues and opportunities were derived from the initial work that the LTCC had undertaken to develop its vision.

Following confirmation of the issues/opportunities for the zone, working papers were developed by Groundworks Associates in consultation with Waikato Regional Council (council) specialised technical staff as well as drawing on existing knowledge held by council about the Taupō catchment.

Four workshop/meetings of the LTCC working party and council staff were held to consider the working papers in depth. The working party also considered other relevant information to establish directions and management options to underpin the Lake Taupō Zone Plan.

The working party presented its proposed directions to the full LTCC at a workshop in August 2016. This workshop enabled the working group to canvas the views of the wider Committee and to incorporate these views into the working papers.

A zone plan was drafted based on the working papers and presented to the LTCC in March 2017. The revised draft of the Zone Plan was then considered at the May LTCC for recommendation to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee (ICMC).

## 4. Zone Plan

The Zone Plan is intended to guide the integrated catchment management activities of council within the Taupō Catchment. It includes:

- principles to guide integrated catchment management within the zone based on council's overarching directions and policies
- focus areas to guide the works undertaken in the zone
- implementation actions for each focus area; and
- processes for monitoring and reviewing the plan.

This plan will contribute to the way council addresses:

- catchment and river management
- erosion and changes in land use
- maintaining and protecting of indigenous biodiversity
- reducing biosecurity risk within the catchment
- management of previous and future works; and
- Identifying the potential multiplicity of natural hazards that could affect the zone.

The plan also sets the context for some of council's more specific plans and strategies that apply to the zone such as the Lake Taupō Erosion and Flood Strategy and the Lake Taupō Asset Management Plan (refer Figure 2 below).

Points to note when considering the final Zone Plan include:

- The Zone Plan has identified that maintaining and improving water quality within the catchment will underpin all activities managed through the Zone Plan and the activities of the LTCC.
- A key principle is that the committee recognises the importance of mana whenua and will continue to maintain and improve these partnerships.
- No new funding is being sought over and above current budgets but over time the focus of council's operational activities will be targeting areas where the greatest environmental benefit can be achieved. This will utilise the information contained with the Taupō catchment's prioritisation process, existing information and knowledge to ensure that these benefits support the vision for the zone.
- The implementation of the Zone Plan and its effectiveness will be monitored and reported on an annual basis to the community. A major review will be conducted every six years and a brief review three years after each major review.

## 5. Legislative context

There is no specific legislation requiring the development of a Zone Plan, however, the content of the plan and the way the plan is developed needs to consider a range of statutes and policies under which council operates (refer Figure 2 below).

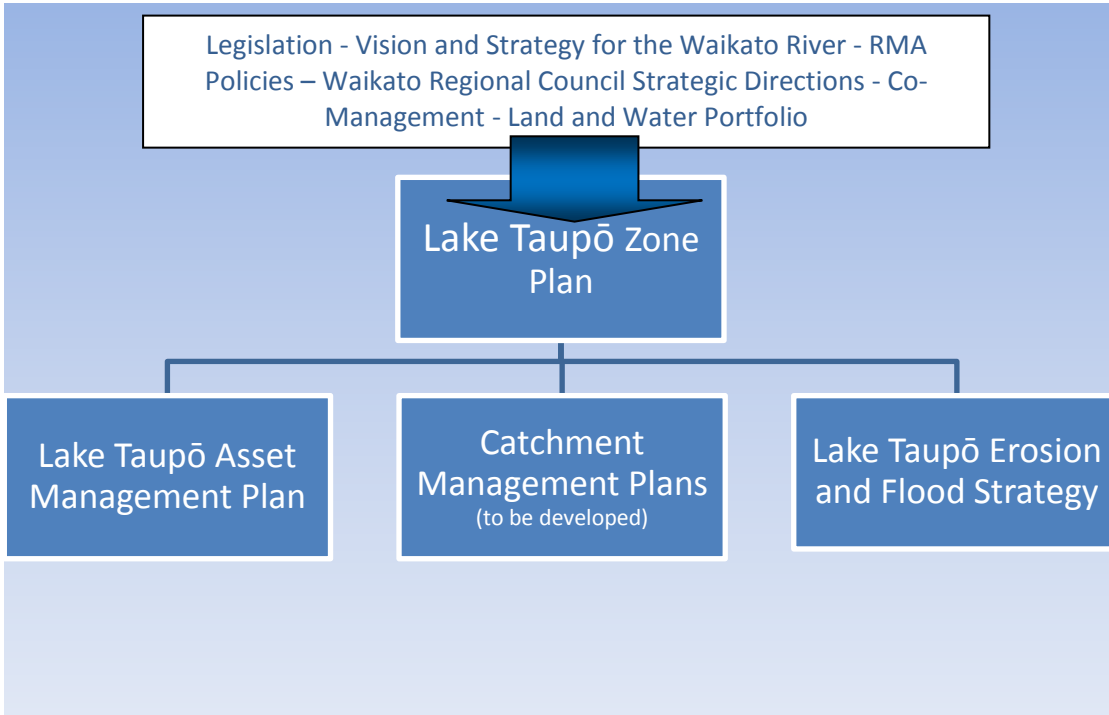


Figure 2: Relationship between the zone plan, legislation and operational planning documents

## 6. Options

The ICMC has two main options. It can:

1. Adopt the Zone Plan (with any amendments)
2. Refer the Zone Plan back to the LTCC for further work.

### Preferred Option

The LTCC has undertaken an extensive and robust process to develop its Zone Plan. Option 1 (above) is recommended noting that the Zone Plan provides for:

- Improved clarity and support for the Vision of the Lake Taupō Zone
- Defined implementation actions to protect and enhance values of indigenous biodiversity and biosecurity within the Zone
- Improved environmental outcomes that have a multiplicity of beneficial outcomes for catchment health such as soil conservation, water quality and biodiversity; and
- Potential for increased collaboration with other agencies for improved environmental outcomes.

**Policy Considerations**

The ICMC has been delegated the power to approve zone management plans:

***POWER TO ACT:***

- 1. To approve zone management plans comprising relevant integrated catchment management priorities (listed above) and asset management plans consistent with Council approved budgets and policy.*

To the best of the writer's knowledge, this decision is not significantly inconsistent with nor is anticipated to have consequences that will be significantly inconsistent with any policy adopted by this local authority or any plan required by the Local Government Act 2002 or any other enactment.

**7. Conclusion**

This report seeks the adoption of the Lake Taupō Zone Plan. The Zone Plan provides high level guidance for the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee and frontline staff for operational activities within the zone. Over time the Zone Plan seeks to focus attention on where the greatest pressures are to obtain the greatest benefit.

---

*Allan Kirk*  
*Zone Manager, Lake Taupō/Upper Waikato*

---

*Clare Crickett*  
*Director, Integrated Catchment Management*

**Attachments:**

- Lake Taupō Zone Plan (Doc# 10593902)

# Waikato Regional Council

## Lake Taupō Zone Plan

### – Draft

Taupō – healthy catchment, healthy  
people

Prepared by Megan Kettle

*Kettle Policy and Planning*

For Waikato Regional Council review

June 2017



## Contents

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	5
1. INTRODUCTION .....	6
1.1. Purpose .....	6
1.2. Scope.....	7
1.3. Plan structure.....	8
2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY FRAMEWORK .....	10
2.1. Statutory context .....	10
2.2. Policy context.....	10
2.3. Waikato Regional Council’s strategic direction .....	10
2.4. Working with others .....	11
3. LAKE TAUPŌ ZONE .....	16
3.1. Catchment description.....	16
3.2. Features of the zone .....	19
4. LAKE TAUPŌ ZONE VISION .....	21
4.1. Vision and mission .....	21
4.2. Water quality .....	21
4.3. Supporting principles .....	23
4.4. Monitoring .....	25
5. FOCUS AREAS .....	26
5.1. Asset management .....	26
5.2. Biosecurity.....	29
5.3. Catchment management .....	33
5.4. Indigenous biodiversity.....	37
5.5. Lake foreshore .....	41
5.6. Natural hazards management .....	44
5.7. River management.....	46
6. FUNDING, MONITORING AND REVIEW .....	49
6.1. Funding .....	49
6.2. Monitoring and Review.....	49
Glossary of Terms.....	50
References .....	51
Appendix One      Legislative and Policy Framework.....	52
Appendix Two      Relevant Natural Hazards.....	59

## Table of figures

Figure 1 - Relationship between operational documents .....	8
Figure 2 - Relationship of Taupō Zone Plan and the council’s strategic direction.....	11
Figure 3 - Taupō Zone .....	18

## Executive summary

Located in the heart of the North Island, surrounding Lake Taupō, the Lake Taupō catchment covers an approximate area of 349,655ha (nearly 9 per cent of the Waikato region). Lake Taupō is the largest lake by surface area in New Zealand at some 61,491ha and comprises 17.5 per cent of the Lake Taupō catchment area. The catchment contains significant geothermal resources, 11 other smaller lakes, part of New Zealand's oldest national park and dual World Heritage area, and significant hydroelectric schemes.

The Taupō Zone Plan sets the strategic direction for Waikato Regional Council's integrated catchment management activities within the Taupō Zone over the next 10 years. The plan provides a summary of the key activities undertaken within the zone and the implementation actions required to achieve the vision.

While the work proposed builds on past achievements, it also signals a shift to a broader focus that, in addition to the traditional emphasis on water quality and soil conservation, will also increase the focus on water quality and contribute to:

- maintaining and protecting indigenous biodiversity
- reducing biosecurity risk within the catchment.

The purpose of this plan is to ensure the council's activities within the zone contribute to improving the health of the Taupō catchment and work towards the vision established by the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee of:

**"Taupō – healthy catchment, healthy people"**

The plan identifies a vision for the zone as well as key principles (how the council will work), focus areas and implementation actions for the zone in the following areas:

- asset management
- biodiversity
- biosecurity
- catchment management
- lake foreshore
- natural hazards management.

# 1. INTRODUCTION

## 1.1. Purpose

The Taupō Zone Plan sets the strategic direction for Waikato Regional Council's integrated catchment management activities within the Taupō Zone over the next 10 years. The plan provides a summary of the key activities undertaken within the zone and the implementation actions required to achieve the vision.

The plan provides broad directions to guide the council's operational activities, and also informs key partners and the community working in the catchment.

While the work proposed builds on past achievements it also signals a shift to a broader focus that, in addition to the traditional emphasis on water quality and soil conservation, will also increase the focus on water quality and contribute to:

- maintaining and protecting indigenous biodiversity
- reducing biosecurity risk within the catchment.

Of specific focus for this zone plan is the acknowledgement that the Taupō catchment enjoys good water quality and maintaining this water quality underpins the future management strategies for the zone.

The purpose of this plan is to ensure the council's activities within the zone contribute to improving the health of the Taupō catchment and work towards the vision established by the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee of:

***"Taupō – healthy catchment, healthy people".***

The council cannot achieve this vision alone and maintaining and growing partnerships with iwi, agencies and key stakeholders such as the Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board, Department of Conservation, Taupō District Council, the agricultural and forestry sectors, landowners and the wider community will be essential.

The plan is informed by the council's strategic direction and implements provisions of the *Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016 (RPS)* and other documents.

## 1.2. Scope

Waikato Regional Council is responsible for the overall management of the region's rivers and their catchments. This is carried out in partnership with local communities. Zone plans are the primary tools for implementation of all river and catchment management activities within each of the eight zones in the region. Delivery is largely the responsibility of the council's Integrated Catchment Management (ICM) directorate.

A key focus of the ICM directorate is on delivering practical services and advice to landowners to improve catchment health. Its key work areas include:

- catchment and river management
- natural hazard management and flood protection
- flood management
- services that care for the natural environment and heritage
- support and advice for industry and landowners on sustainable land management practices.

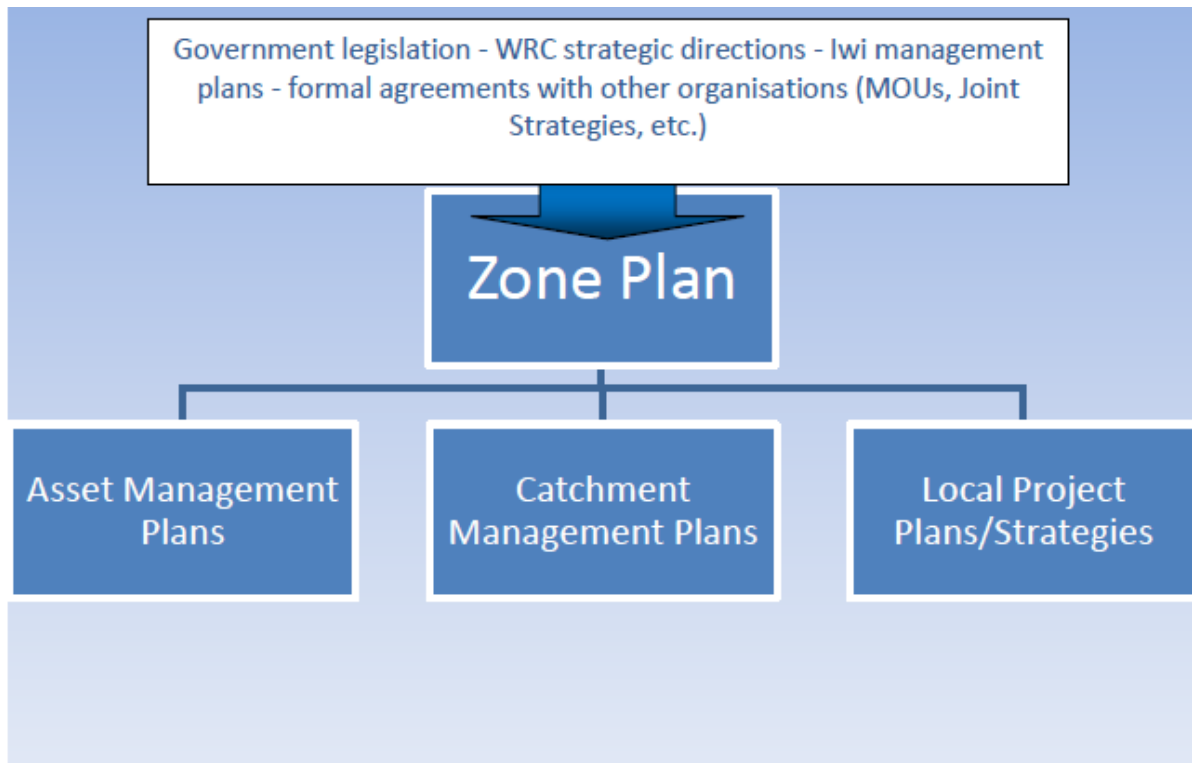
This zone plan identifies actions for delivering these services in a complementary way to make best use of limited resources. It does not cover all of the council's work in the zone – rather it must be seen as one component of a suite of activities being undertaken in the zone.

The plan identifies a vision for the zone as well as key principles (how the council will work), focus areas and implementation actions for the zone in the following areas:

- asset management
- biodiversity
- biosecurity
- catchment management
- lake foreshore
- natural hazards management.

This plan provides the overarching strategies relating to the way the council will undertake catchment management. It is supported by the 'Taupō Asset Management Plan' that focuses on

flood protection and river management infrastructural assets. Figure 1 below shows the relationship between the plan and other operational plans the council may develop for a particular zone.



*Figure 1 - Relationship between operational documents*

Waikato Regional Council is one of a number of organisations working to improve catchment health within the zone. Iwi, district councils, government departments, industry, community groups and individual landowners are all active in implementing initiatives to improve the health of the catchment. The intention of the plan is to complement and support the work of these other agencies and individuals, and align programmes where opportunities arise.

### 1.3. Plan structure

This zone plan is structured as follows.

- Section 2 sets out the legislative and policy context for the plan with further detail provided in Appendix One.
- Sections 3 describes the Taupō Zone and key stakeholders and agencies that work within it.
- Section 4 sets out the vision for the zone and the principles that are applied to zone activities.

- Section 5 sets out the implementation focus areas, implementation actions and monitoring measures.
- Section 6 describes the funding and monitoring and review framework for the plan.

## 2. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY FRAMEWORK

### 2.1. Statutory context

The plan implements a number of the council's responsibilities under a variety of statutes including the:

- Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA)
- Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941
- Local Government Act 2002
- Biosecurity Act 1993.

The plan also assists the council in implementing provisions of the Waikato Regional Policy Statement (RPS), the Waikato Regional Plan (WRP) and the Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP). Further information on the relevant statutes can be found in Appendix One.

### 2.2. Policy context

There are a significant number of national and regional policies that are relevant to this zone plan. This plan recognises and responds to this range of policy documents and applies them to the Taupō Zone. Some of the key policies are listed below and are further referenced in Appendix One.

- National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014.
- Proposed National Policy Statement for Biodiversity.
- Waikato Regional Policy Statement.
- Waikato Regional Plan.
- National Direction for Pest Management.
- Waikato Pest Management Plan.

### 2.3. Waikato Regional Council's strategic direction

In 2016, Waikato Regional Council adopted a new strategic direction to guide work over the current council's term (2016-2019). It also sets the context for the 2018-2028 Long Term Plan.

The strategic direction sets priorities for the council's work up to 2019. It also reflects community desires and needs and identifies key factors that will determine whether the council is successful in achieving its strategic direction.

The strategic direction contains seven priorities. Further information on the council's strategic direction can be found on the Waikato Regional Council website ([waikatoregion.govt.nz/strategy](http://waikatoregion.govt.nz/strategy)). How the plan contributes to the achievement of these priorities is illustrated below.

			ZONE PRINCIPLES				
			Water quality	Partnerships	Leadership	Catchment health	Greatest environmental benefit
Strategic priorities	1	Support communities	√	√		√	
	2	Partnerships	√	√		√	
	3	Positively influence future land use choices	√	√	√	√	√
	4	Effective management of fresh water	√	√		√	
	5	Understanding risks and resilience		√		√	
	6	Coastal and marine					
	7	Quality of life					

Figure 2 - Relationship of Taupō Zone Plan to the council's strategic direction

## 2.4. Working together

As noted earlier, there are other organisations with management responsibilities and doing complementary and valuable work within the zone. It is important these organisations are recognised and the objectives and strategies of these organisations are understood. Outcomes will be achieved most efficiently when objectives, strategies and work programmes align.

### 2.4.1. Ngāti Tūwharetoa

Ngāti Tūwharetoa hold mana whenua, rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga over the central North Island including the Lake Taupō Catchment and part of the Upper Waikato, Whanganui, Rangitikei and Rangitaiki Catchments.

As kaitiaki, Ngāti Tūwharetoa has an intrinsic duty to ensure the mauri, and the physical and spiritual health of the environment (inclusive of the whenua and water resources) is maintained, protected and enhanced. Ngāti Tūwharetoa are in a unique position of holding legal ownership of most of the waterways and waterbodies within their rohe, as well as retaining ownership of most of the private land within the Lake Taupō Catchment.

By deeds with the Crown dated 28 August 1992 and 10 September 2007, the Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board (TMTB) is the legal owner of Taupō Waters. The term Taupō Waters refers to property including the bed, water column and air space of Lake Taupō and the Waihora, Waihaha, Whanganui, Whareroa, Kuratau, Poutu, Waimarino, Tauranga-Taupō, Tongariro, Waipehi, Waiotaka, Hinemaiaia and Waitahanui rivers, and the Waikato River from the outlet of Lake Taupō to a place known as Te Toka a Tia, downstream and inclusive of the Huka Falls.

The TMTB is involved in a range of resource management, conservation and local government processes including the 2007 Deed with the Crown for Taupō Waters, the 2010 Deed with Crown in relation to the Waikato River Co-Governance and Co-Management Arrangements, membership on the Lake Taupō Protection Project Joint Committee, membership on Catchment Committees, Joint Management Agreements with Taupō District Council and Waikato Regional Council, and mitigation agreements with hydroelectric operators. Necessarily, Ngāti Tūwharetoa must be involved in any proposals that impact or effect their rohe, and in-particular TMTB as the owner of Taupō Waters.

TMTB is an iwi authority under the Resource Management Act 1991 and is able to facilitate consultation with appropriate hapū and marae. However, it is important to note the autonomy of Nga Hapū o Ngāti Tūwharetoa who shall be involved in aspects of this zone plan in their own right. TMTB is involved in a range of aspects of resource management due to its fiduciary responsibilities to Taupō Waters and iwi authority status.

In addition, in December 2016 Ngāti Tūwharetoa and the Crown initialed a Deed of Settlement. One of the outcomes of the settlement will be the establishment of a joint committee called Te Kōpua Kānapanapa that will develop a Taupō Catchment Plan (Te Kaupapa Kaitiaki). The settlement is

progressing but at this time it is unknown when the process will be completed and the resulting settlement legislation passed.

The effectiveness of zone activities is predicated on a good working relationship between council and the TMTB, and meaningful engagement with Ngā Hapū o Ngāti Tūwharetoa and Tūwharetoa Economic Authorities (landowners).

#### 2.4.2. Taupō District Council

The entire zone lies within the Taupō District. The council has a legislative and strategic relationship with Taupō District Council (TDC) in respect of achieving the sustainable management of natural and physical resources within the zone. TDC is primarily responsible for controlling land use within its district. It is therefore important to the efficient and effective management of council controlled schemes that the two councils continue to work together to ensure the integration of land use planning and infrastructure delivery.

The Local Government Act (Schedule 10) requires that future growth and anticipated demand is considered as part of long term asset management planning. This enables future requirements for new assets, or upgrades to existing assets, to be identified and planned in advance. For example, by identifying locations for future urban growth and the projected timing of that growth, management of the control schemes can align with that planned growth.

Taupō District Council's work is guided by its long term plan (LTP). The current LTP is for 2015-2025 and identifies TDC's goals as:

- Ensure the Taupō District remains a great place to live.
- Promote economic development.
- Protect our water resources and use them wisely.
- Maintain the quality infrastructure that we have.
- Keep rates and debt affordable.

In addition to the above goals, TDC's community outcomes outline the outcomes it wants for the district. The community outcomes were last reviewed in 2011 and are:

- Economy – our communities prosper in a thriving local economy with a diverse range of rewarding employment opportunities.
- Environment – a shared responsibility for places we are proud of.

- Engagement – council is connected with its communities, advocating for their social and cultural wellbeing.

The Lake Taupō Zone Plan clearly supports the goals and outcomes sought by Taupō District Council, particularly by maintaining and enhancing resources that support economic development, and working to protect water resources within the district.

#### 2.4.3. Department of Conservation

The Department of Conservation (DOC) manages 9542ha of public conservation land comprising reserves and conservation areas within the Lake Taupō basin. Most of this land lies within the western and northern bays of Lake Taupō and was originally protected via the 1970s Lakeshore Reserve Scheme. These reserves continue to provide an important buffer from pastoral activities occurring on land at higher elevations in the north and west of the catchment.

DOC's management objectives for the Taupō basin are to achieve an integrated approach to ensure the continued protection of the natural and historic values of all land within it, regardless of tenure, in co-operation with other landowners and local authorities and to protect the soil and water conservation values of land managed by the department, primarily by animal pest control, fire prevention and fencing where appropriate. DOC will continue to work with community conservation groups to increase areas of native restoration planting within lakeshore reserves.

DOC also manages the Lake Taupō Sports Fishery on behalf of the Crown and Ngāti Tūwharetoa. The fishery is managed with a philosophy to allow the wild fishery to flourish with a minimum of management intervention. DOC is committed to ensuring that fishery management is a collaborative partnership between iwi and the Crown with a focus on a sustainable wild fishery serving iwi, recreational anglers and future generations.

DOC prepares statutory management plans that set out how it will manage lands and resources under its control. Conservation management strategies (CMS) are 10 year regional strategies that provide an overview of conservation issues and give direction for the management of public conservation land and waters, and species for which DOC has responsibility. Their purpose is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, and for recreation, tourism, and any other conservation purposes. The Lake Taupō Catchment lies within the Tongariro/Taupō Conservancy. The most recent CMS for this conservancy was 2002-2012. There are no reviews currently programmed. Although dated, the CMS contains nine principles and these remain relevant.

- Protection and enhancement of the natural environment within the conservancy.
- Protection of historic resources where they are managed by the department.
- Development of an effective conservation partnership with Tangata Whenua.
- Fostering recreation use of public conservation land.
- Limiting non-recreation commercial use of public conservation land.
- Enhancing advocacy outcomes and community relations.

#### 2.4.4. Lake Taupō Protection Project

The Lake Taupō Protection Project was established in 2007 with Ngāti Tūwharetoa as kaitiaki of the lake, the Crown, Waikato Regional Council and Taupō District Council. The objective of the project was to prevent the further deterioration of water quality in Lake Taupō by reducing the volume of nitrogen entering the lake by 20 per cent. The Crown, Waikato Regional Council and Taupō District Council committed \$79.2 million to reduce nitrogen inputs to the lake.

The original project agreement set out four specific strategies for achieving the purpose but also acknowledged that the project may vary over time. The project agreement established the Lake Taupō Protection Trust and Lake Taupō Joint Committee. The project is governed by the Lake Taupō Joint Committee.

By mid-2015, the Lake Taupō Protection Trust secured nitrogen reduction agreements totalling 170 tonnes, meeting the project target. This was achieved through strong collaboration and commitment from all parties, but particularly landowners through land use change.

The project is now focusing on monitoring to ensure water quality is sustained for future generations.

## 3. LAKE TAUPŌ ZONE

### 3.1. Catchment description

Located in the heart of the North Island, surrounding Lake Taupō, the Lake Taupō catchment covers an approximate area of 349,655ha (nearly 9 per cent of the Waikato region). Lake Taupō is the largest lake by surface area in New Zealand at some 61,491ha and comprises 17.5 per cent of the Lake Taupō catchment area. The catchment contains significant geothermal resources, 11 other smaller lakes, part of New Zealand's oldest national park and dual World Heritage area, and significant hydroelectric schemes. Key settlements in the zone are Taupō and Turangi. It is an important tourist destination and well known for its trout fishery. The catchment is entirely contained within one territorial authority (Taupō District).

The landscape around Lake Taupō is relatively young and dynamic, with over 28 eruptions in the last 27,000 years. Of most significance was the eruption in 186 AD which resulted in the formation of the crater that was subsequently filled to form Lake Taupō. As a result of this volcanic history, much of the southern and eastern parts of the lakeshore are made of looser pumice and ash which are more susceptible to erosion.

Lake Taupō is of national importance. It is recognised as a valuable tourism draw card, a source of water for communities and a wonderful place to swim, fish and enjoy other recreational activities. The lake, its tributaries and landscape also provide important habitat for many of New Zealand's unique indigenous plants and animal species.

Ngāti Tūwharetoa are tangata whenua in the catchment. The culture and history of Ngāti Tūwharetoa is an intrinsic feature of the catchment landscape and waterscape. Each water body in the catchment is a natural taonga of Ngāti Tūwharetoa. Ngāti Tūwharetoa's aspiration to protect the water quality of their waterways is bound by their tikanga and the values that bind them to these waterways.

Lake Taupō has some of the best trout fishing in the world and receives the highest level of angling use of any fishery in New Zealand, accounting for approximately 40 per cent of New Zealand's total freshwater sports fishing. It provides exciting river and lake fishing all year round in a stunning natural setting. It attracts anglers from around the world and is integral to the economic wellbeing of Taupō and the wider region.

Around 40 rivers, streams and tributaries feed into Lake Taupō with a combined length of 597km, however, the combined length of all watercourses that drain the catchment encompasses some 1468km. The Tongariro and Tauranga Taupō are the largest rivers that feed into the eastern side of Lake Taupō by length and also by volume.

With the exception of Lake Taupō, there are 11 other smaller lakes in the Lake Taupō catchment of which Lake Rotoaira is the largest.

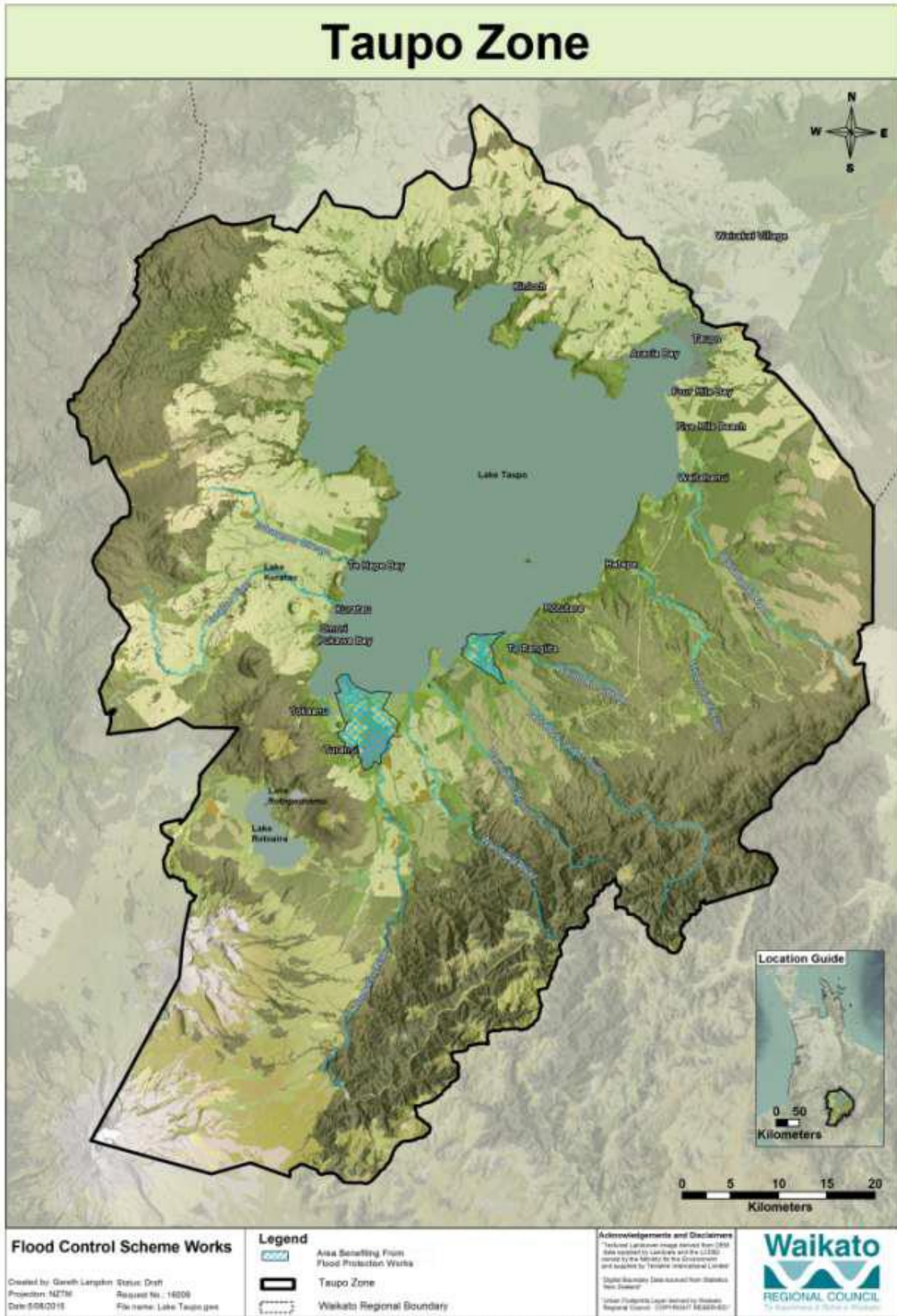


Figure 3 - Taupō Zone

Land use in the catchment has changed dramatically since 1840. The four major changes have been:

- loss of tussock or shrubland and indigenous forest cover
- development of urban areas and hard infrastructure
- an increase in exotic production forestry
- an increase in areas used for primary production (pasture).

Pastoral farming was relatively slow to develop due to the soil conditions of the area which did not naturally support intensive pastoral farming. However, major land clearances did occur in the Taupō Zone in the 1930s and 1940s which took land cover away from river margins. These changes, combined with the fragile nature of the soil, resulted in accelerated erosion within the catchment. In 1965 Tūwharetoa and the former local authorities took these issues to the government. In 1976 the Lake Taupō Catchment Control Scheme (LTCCS) was developed to control soil erosion and protect water quality.

The Taupō community's passion for protecting the water quality of the lake and their advocacy for change culminated in the creation of the 2020 Taupō-nui-a-Tia Action Plan. This plan was completed in 2005 and represented three years of commitments from various groups, Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board, Waikato Regional Council, Taupō District Council, the Department of Conservation, Department of Internal Affairs, and the Lakes and Waterways Action Group.

### 3.2. Features of the zone

The Lake Taupō Zone operates in a unique context compared to the rest of the Waikato region due to the following factors:

- Water quality defines the Lake Taupō catchment. The Taupō catchment has very high water quality and the importance of this high water quality was recognised in the development of "Variation 5 – Lake Taupō Catchment" to the Waikato Regional Plan. This variation was put in place to protect the water quality of Lake Taupō. This variation (since incorporated into the Waikato Regional Plan) places controls on discharges into the lake. A multi-agency government funded and independent trust has removed 20 per cent of the manageable nitrogen within the catchment to try to offset the "load to come" of nitrogen still in the groundwater system, with the aim of maintaining lake water quality at early 2000 levels into the future.

- The zone contains much high biodiversity value, including unique geothermal areas.
- The Waikato region contains almost 70 per cent of New Zealand’s geothermal areas with the majority of these areas located within the zone. Geothermal resources are hugely important for the region. They provide employment in the tourism, primary and secondary industrial sectors, and are used to generate 15 per cent of the nation’s electricity. They also support some of the world’s rarest and most vulnerable ecosystems, and have spectacular surface features such as geysers and the iconic Champagne Pool. Māori regard them as taonga and have a rich history of diverse traditional uses including cooking, bathing and healing.
- A large proportion of the zone is made up of public<sup>1</sup> and Māori owned land. In addition, 42 per cent of property owners are external to the district.
- There are a number of features of the zone that attract tourism including the trout fishery, Lake Taupō, walking and cycling and multi-sport and other recreational activities. Tourism spend within the zone continues to increase, as does the number of tourists visiting the areas.
- The Taupō area leads New Zealand in terms of its renewable electricity generation capacity, with a number of electricity generation companies being located here. Lake Taupō forms the source of the Waikato River which provides approximately 10 per cent of New Zealand’s electricity through a series of eight power stations along the river. The tributaries that flow into Lake Taupō are also harnessed for hydroelectricity. Most geothermal power is generated within the Taupō volcanic zone, many of which are owned fully or partly by local iwi.
- The Taupō Zone is located centrally in the North Island. This location provides opportunities in terms of economic development, freight, logistics and attracting visitors. The high throughput of the area, combined with the large length of border with three other regions (Bay of Plenty, Hawkes Bay and Manawatu-Wanganui) also poses risks – particularly in terms of biodiversity and economic development through the introduction of animal and plant pests.

---

<sup>1</sup> Prior to Variation 5 to the Waikato Regional Plan becoming operative (2011) land ownership was as follows - 28% Crown owned and 47% Māori owned. Please note these figure are likely to have changed since that time, however they provide a useful indication of significant land holdings within the zone.

- The Tokaanu swamplands are part of the South Taupō wetland that has been recommended for listing as a RAMSAR site of international significance.

## 4. LAKE TAUPŌ ZONE VISION

### 4.1. Vision and mission

The vision and mission for the Taupō Zone have been developed in recognition of the current state of the Lake Taupō catchment and the opportunities that exist within the activities that council manages. The zone plan vision and mission was developed through workshops with the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee.

#### Taupō – healthy catchment, healthy people

Valuing, protecting and restoring the mauri (life force and interconnectedness) of the Taupō catchment, and ensuring the waters of Lake Taupō remain drinkable and pristine by:

- working together as leaders and kaitiaki/stewards for future generations
- engaging communities and partners
- balancing differing views and values
- influencing policy and priorities
- making good decisions – delivering results.

### 4.2. Water quality

Maintaining and improving water quality within the catchment will underpin all activities managed through this zone plan and the activities of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee. The Lake Taupō Catchment Committee has identified the maintenance of water quality as fundamental to catchment health. As a consequence, the value placed on water quality underpins the implementation actions proposed in this plan.

Lake Taupō is recognised as a nationally important water body and holds special significance to the local and regional community. Protection of lake water quality and catchment water quality more generally has been a focus of the Taupō community and is a core part of the plan's vision for the Taupō catchment.

Water quality defines the Lake Taupō catchment. It is one of the few catchments nationally whose water quality is such that the focus is on maintenance rather than restoration. The water quality of

the open water of Lake Taupō is currently excellent and average values of key indicators of water quality have remained largely stable over the past 17 years.

However, the health of Lake Taupō water quality is at risk due to changes in the Taupō catchment. Intensification of land use has led to higher levels of nutrients entering the lake. In 2003 scientific agreement was reached that the water quality in the lake was under threat from nitrogen inputs and to maintain the lake's water quality the catchment needed to reduce the amount of nitrogen entering the lake by 20 per cent. In 2011 amendments to specifically achieve this target became operative in the Waikato Regional Plan.

The lake and rivers of the catchment are a significant draw card for visitors. However, increasing tourism places additional pressure on water quality through, for example, the impact of increased waste water, increasing boat traffic and summer visitors to remote bays.

The science surrounding water quality is constantly changing and improving. Given the improving scientific knowledge, ongoing education of the community on the risks to water quality and potential impacts of a degraded Lake Taupō are necessary.

Water quality is not a topic that has been traditionally addressed (or funded) in zone plans, where the focus has been more on soil conservation and erosion prevention – notwithstanding the water quality benefits of both of these activities. However, the move to a more integrated “healthy catchment” framework may provide opportunities to actively include water quality objectives alongside other aspects of catchment health. There are also opportunities to look at improving water quality through funding projects related to, for example, biodiversity and catchment maintenance.

In addition to non-point source discharges to water, which are more typically addressed through traditional catchment works such as planting and fencing, risks to water quality in the catchment include chemical spill incidents and biosecurity incursions. Both of these risks could have a significant impact in a short period of time and therefore it is important the council is prepared to respond should the situation eventuate.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Support agencies and projects working towards improvements in water quality such as the Lake Taupō Protection Project Joint Committee, the Lakes and Waterways Action Group Trust, Taupō Lake Care, and Advocates for the Tongariro River	LTCC	Ongoing
Actively seek reassurance that processes for quick and effective responses are in place to deal with any incident that could significantly affect water quality (e.g. chemical spill or biosecurity incursion)	LTCC	Ongoing
Actively advocate the importance of Lake Taupō water quality during any relevant regional plan review/plan change process	LTCC	Ongoing
Establish a programme of information to assist the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee maintain awareness of water quality information and monitoring	Zone Manager	Annually

### 4.3. Supporting principles

The principles below have been developed to describe the overarching principles that will direct the manner in which work is undertaken within the zone. Regard should be given to the following principles when undertaking activities within the zone.

**Principle One: Recognise the importance of mana whenua and community partnerships and continue to maintain and improve these partnerships.**

It is not possible for the council to achieve the vision for the Lake Taupō catchment alone. Supporting the community will assist in growing community capacity and resilience and will provide the most effective and efficient solutions to issues that arise within the catchment. A partnership approach will be critical to the long term delivery of a range of zone plan actions.

The council and Lake Taupō Catchment Committee value relationships with other agencies and stakeholders, including Taupō District Council, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, the Department of Internal Affairs, the Department of Conservation, power and forestry companies, landowners and community groups.

#### **Principle Two: Provide leadership and visibility**

The Lake Taupō Catchment Committee is made up of elected councillors and representatives from interested partners and stakeholders. Given the make-up and knowledge of the committee they are in a unique position to champion the needs of the zone to the council and other agencies.

#### **Principle Three: Protect and enhance the environmental health of the catchment**

Ultimately the council undertakes activities described in this plan to protect and enhance the environmental health of the catchment. Catchment health is also a key part of the zone plan vision.

#### **Principle Four: Target the achievement of the greatest environmental benefit**

The council has limited resources and the application of these resources needs to be prioritised to ensure the greatest benefits can be achieved. By prioritising activities that are either individually of high importance (i.e. protection of geothermal habitat) or that target multiple benefits (i.e. planting of indigenous species that may provide biodiversity, water quality and soil stability benefits), the most efficient use of council resources will be made. Wherever possible, the council will prioritise opportunities to leverage whole-of-catchment health objectives and achieve multiple outcomes (integrated catchment management). In addition, the council will also prioritise projects that involve working with others, particularly if additional funding can be leveraged by the partnership.

#### 4.4. Monitoring

Monitoring closes the loop in the 'plan-do-monitor-review' cycle and informs decision makers of the consequences of actions and changes in the environment. Policy and plan monitoring provides a means for determining how well plans are working in practice. Monitoring the following indicators will assist the council in:

- understanding if this plan has been effective
- tracking progress towards the stated vision
- identifying actions or strategies that require review and/or amendment.

AREA	MEASURE
<b>WATER QUALITY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Summary of data collected within the zone as part of Waikato Regional Council's regular monthly water quality monitoring.</li> </ul>
<b>PRINCIPLE 1: MANA WHENUA AND COMMUNITY PARTNERSHIPS</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Report on collaborative activities.</li> <li>• Number of workshops, forums, events and other networking opportunities attended annually.</li> <li>• Percentage of key stakeholders satisfied with the council's zone management activities.</li> </ul>
<b>PRINCIPLE 2: LEADERSHIP AND VISIBILITY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of submissions made.</li> <li>• Percentage of key stakeholders satisfied with the council's zone management activities.</li> </ul>
<b>PRINCIPLE 3: CATCHMENT HEALTH</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Annual report on achievement of focus area implementation actions.</li> </ul>
<b>PRINCIPLE 4: GREATEST ENVIRONMENTAL BENEFIT</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of identified priority areas formally protected.</li> <li>• Percentage of new works targeting multiple focus areas.</li> </ul>

## 5. FOCUS AREAS

Work undertaken within the zone can be divided into seven focus areas.

- Asset management.
- Biosecurity.
- Catchment management.
- Indigenous biodiversity.
- Lake foreshore.
- Natural hazards.
- River management.

The following sections contain a description of each focus area as well as the implementation actions and monitoring indicators relevant to each area.

### 5.1. Asset management

The topic of asset management refers to assets the council owns within the Taupō Zone. The *Lake Taupō Asset Management Plan 2015* (AMP) operationalises the management of assets in the zone. The council is currently developing a regional asset management plan. The AMP will sit within this regional context. The AMP provides detailed information to show that the flood protection and river management assets in the Lake Taupō catchment are designed for the services they perform to the community. Collectively, the assets have a total replacement value of approximately \$7,200,000.

The bulk of the council's assets relate to two flood control schemes located on the Tongariro and Tauranga-Taupō rivers. Smaller scale river management assets are also located within the Hinemaiaia River and the Hangarito canal. Asset management in the Tongariro and Tauranga-Taupō catchments is sensitive due to the importance of the rivers as trout fisheries.

Assets in the zone are currently well managed by the council and there is good historical and current information. The council manages the Tongariro flood protection scheme. The scheme is designed to protect the community of Turangi and properties adjacent to the Tongariro River from flooding and inundation up to a 1 per cent **annul exceedance probability** (AEP). The council also manages the Tauranga Taupō flood protection scheme, which is designed to protect the communities of Oruatua

and Te Rangiita, and property adjacent to the Tauranga Taupō River and within the river floodplain, from flooding and inundation up to a 2 per cent AEP. The flood schemes are reviewed frequently – every five years. The frequency of these reviews reflects the dynamic nature of the river systems and the relative newness of both flood control schemes. Frequent reviews of asset performance is considered necessary for improving the council’s understanding of how these rivers behave and their future management requirements.

Future work planned for the flood schemes includes assessing the current level of service actually provided and incorporating the projected impact of climate change. Any changes to the level of service would be discussed with the community through the council’s long term plan process. In the future it is likely a conversation will need to be had with the community around the future level of service provided by these assets and the affordability of that level of service.

The assets are currently assumed to be providing their stated level of service. However, it is acknowledged there is an incomplete section of the Awamate stopbank (part of the Tongariro flood protection scheme). The council proposes to complete this section, but requires satisfactory agreements with property owners in order to progress.

The council assets support community resilience by enabling the community to develop and live their day-to-day lives with a lower level of risk. Flood schemes provide protection to the community enabling them to go about their lives with a lower level of risk and enable additional community development (subject to appropriate controls) in areas where the risk may be considered too high if the schemes were not in place.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Advocate for appropriate staff and funding to be directed towards the actions identified in the Lake Taupō Asset Management Plan	LTCC	Ongoing
Continue to maintain assets at the level of service outlined in the Lake Taupō Asset Management Plan and review these levels 5-yearly	Zone Manager	5 yearly

#### Monitoring indicators

1. Achievement of Taupō Asset Management Plan levels of service and performance targets.
2. Implementation of the Taupō Asset Management Plan improvement plan.

## 5.2. Biosecurity

Biosecurity is the protection of an environment from biological threats. Throughout the zone there are a range of animal and plant pests which threaten indigenous species and habitats, and/or economic activity in the catchment.

Waikato Regional Council's primary direction setting document for biosecurity is the *Regional Pest Management Plan* (RPMP). The RPMP details which plants and animals are declared pests in the region. It explains why they are pests, and outlines how each pest will be managed over a 10 year period.

The Lake Taupō Zone has existing biosecurity challenges and new threats e.g. wallabies, aquatic weeds, lake snow and didymo. However, comparative to other zones it has relatively few weed pests. The most significant pests within the zone are heather, legumes (such as gorse and broom) and wilding conifers. Programmes are in progress to address these threats and these are intended to continue.

The Taupō zone is valued for its water quality and biodiversity. Addressing biosecurity issues can also assist in protecting water quality and biodiversity. For example:

- Animal pests can cause vegetation damage which in turn reduces soil stability causing increased sedimentation in waterbodies.
- Aquatic pests can decrease water clarity as well as compete with native species for habitat.

The zone has a lot to lose from current and potential incursions of pests as it is a catchment of high biodiversity value and is nationally recognised for its waterbodies. Biosecurity is particularly critical in aquatic ecosystems where the response to pests is dramatic and there are very few tools to deal with incursions once they happen.

The catchment is also at high risk from new incursions as it borders three other regions where controls and pest management approaches may differ, and it is a tourism hotspot and popular visitor destination. This provides opportunities for pest incursions (e.g. didymo) being transported into the zone.

Pests could have a large economic impact in the zone, particularly as tourism is essential to the Taupō economy. A significant proportion of this tourism is based around the natural environment

and consequently any impact of pests on this natural environment may also detrimentally impact on the local economy. In spite of the high potential impact, pest management within the zone has a low profile and therefore it is particularly important that biosecurity activities are actively promoted.

The Department of Conservation has recently released “Predator Free 2050” – an ambitious goal to rid New Zealand of the most damaging introduced predators possums, rats and stoats – by 2050.

The Lake Taupō Catchment Committee strongly supports this programme. Predator Free 2050 will:

- remove the major threats to native wildlife
- enhance economic return from agriculture and forestry and reduce risk of disease
- create new opportunities for regional development
- reinforce New Zealand’s trade and tourism brand
- provide a legacy for future generations.

Biosecurity activities will be a future focus for works in the catchment. The council will look for opportunities to link achievement of biosecurity objectives with other work programmes to enhance biosecurity specifically and to improve overall catchment health.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Maintain an awareness of biosecurity threats	LTCC	Ongoing
Actively cultivate biosecurity partnerships with other regional councils, but in particular those that neighbour the catchment – Horizons, Bay of Plenty and Hawke’s Bay	Biosecurity Managers	Annually
Advocate for and support greater development of biosecurity partnerships with the Department of Conservation, Tūwharetoa and others	LTCC	Ongoing
Advocate for biosecurity managers to be able to use the best available tools to achieve a healthy catchment	LTCC	Ongoing
Advocate for activities that work towards maintaining the gains made in possum control and keeping possum numbers low (less	LTCC	Ongoing

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
than 10% <b>RTC</b> ) – this includes submitting on regional biosecurity policy		
Advocate for priority funding for surveillance and pathway management due to the catchment’s high biodiversity and tourism value and high biosecurity risk	LTCC	Ongoing
Promote a shared funding model approach to future possum control e.g. the approach taken in Rotopounamu and Pihanga by the Department of Conservation, community groups and OSPRI	Biosecurity Managers	As required
Support the development of the Regional Pest Management Plan and make submissions to this plan where necessary	LTCC	Ongoing
Utilise communications to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• promote vigilance of biosecurity issues and the risk to the Lake Taupō Catchment</li> <li>• increase awareness of the value of the catchment’s natural environment and the threat biosecurity incursions could pose to the economy, agriculture and biodiversity</li> </ul>	Biosecurity Manager Zone Manager LTCC	Ongoing
Raise community awareness of pathway management and how to manage risks, such as through the didymo awareness programme, machine hygiene etc	Biosecurity Manager Zone Manager LTCC	Ongoing
Engage with science to ensure the council has the right tools to manage new pest incursions	Biosecurity Manager	Ongoing
When funds are available for possum control, consider targeting these activities toward high priority biodiversity sites (as determined by the council’s prioritisation process)	Zone Manager Biosecurity Manager	Ongoing

### Implementation actions

Action	Who	When
Encourage the development of a landowner-led programme that targets the management of mammalian pests on private land	Zone Manager Biosecurity Manager	Ongoing

### Monitoring indicators

1. Number of biosecurity activities undertaken as part of catchment management works.
2. Increased community awareness of biosecurity risks.

### 5.3. Catchment management

Catchment management works can be broadly divided into two categories – catchment maintenance and catchment new works. Traditionally the focus of catchment management works had been to reduce accelerated erosion, control sediment and water quality issues.

New catchment works receive 35 per cent council funding, which also comes with a commitment to provide advice, maintain a relationship with the landowners, inspect works and fund maintenance at 50 per cent.

Waikato Regional Council is undertaking a process of priority site identification. The identification of priority sites is scheduled for the zone in 2017-2018, but it is unlikely this process will identify many sites on private land that don't already have works completed.

Currently scheme works/new works undertaken on private land that are not owned or partially funded by the council are not listed on the asset register. This leaves a gap in the council's information which is problematic, as these works are important for catchment health. The council also provides significant advice to landowners and this added value to catchment health is not currently measured or recorded.

Given the few opportunities for new works specifically targeting soil conservation and water quality, the council will widen its application of this activity to target initiatives that include biodiversity, biosecurity, and the wider ecological health of the catchment.

Catchment maintenance has been focused on addressing soil erosion and water quality issues. The **soil compartments** of the Lake Taupō Catchment Control Scheme (LTCCS) are the fundamental platform for Lake Taupō water quality protection and thus are of critical importance.

The success of the LTCCS has contributed to 90 per cent of waterways within the Lake Taupō Zone having been fenced off (excluding public access waterways). The majority of these fences are on private land and whilst council contributes 50 per cent of the maintenance cost for these fences, they remain privately owned.

These works are protected either by a Land Improvement Agreement (LIA) or Memorandum of Encumbrance (MOE). These are a contract between the landowner and council. Generally it is expected the existing works will be owned, maintained and replaced by the landowner in accordance with the respective contract; however, some funding assistance will be provided if it

meets the funding criteria. The council's role mainly involves providing advice and monitoring compliance. The current maintenance processes for LTCCS assets are working well and compliance of landowners is good.

Although current maintenance and compliance is good the majority of the infrastructure was installed prior to 1989, and is therefore at least 25 years old. The high age of the infrastructure is likely to result in increased maintenance costs over the next 15 years, particularly with the increased frequency of extreme weather events projected as a result of climate change. This increased maintenance could challenge financial resources.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
The amount of funding allocated to each landowner for new catchment works on private land will reflect the resulting public benefit to the zone. Soil conservation new works policy will guide allocation of funding	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Consider funding new works on private land where there are multiple benefits for catchment health, including benefits for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• soil conservation</li> <li>• water quality</li> <li>• biodiversity and/or</li> <li>• the wider ecological health of the catchment</li> </ul> Priority will be given to projects that include collaborative funding	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Where new works are undertaken landowners will be encouraged to enter into legal protection of these works in order to protect these investments in perpetuity	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Include all new works that are not owned by the council but that contribute to catchment health on the soil conservation register (to be developed)	Zone Manager	2019

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
When undertaking new works to improve catchment health, in addition to soil stability and water quality, take biodiversity and biodiversity values into consideration where there are tangible benefits	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Continue to prioritise relationships with landowners responsible for catchment control assets in recognition of the importance of these assets	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Continue funding of the Lake Taupō Catchment Control Scheme through rates to the level agreed in the funding document	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Maintain an inspection programme for catchment control assets as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Years 0-10: No inspection</li> <li>- Years 10-30: 5 yearly</li> <li>- 30 years +: 3 yearly</li> </ul>	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Develop a communications programme that provides information to the wider zone community of the critical contribution that catchment control soil compartments make to protecting water quality	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Legal protection for catchment control assets will continue to be included on land titles and existing Land Improvement Agreements (LIA) will be retained. There are very few situations where it may be appropriate for an LIA to be removed. A policy will be developed that sets out the parameters when removal may be appropriate.	Zone Manager	Quarterly
Develop a soil conservation register for assets on private land that are not captured by the asset register i.e. assets that are owned by	Asset Register Team	2019

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
landowners rather than council, but that contribute to the health of the catchment and represent council investment in the form of advice		
Allocate sufficient resources to the council's information provision activities in recognition of the support these activities provide to landowners – particularly those activities that support the development of private assets that contribute to the council's catchment management objectives	Zone Manager	Annually
Recommend that Waikato Regional Council maintain a reserve specifically for any shortfall of catchment maintenance funds where maintenance in a catchment in a particular year exceeds the budgeted amount to allow for funding of all necessary maintenance	Zone Manager	Annually

Monitoring indicators
1. Number of new works funded.
2. Results from five yearly survey of soil stability.
3. Summary of suspended sediment data collected within the zone as part of Waikato Regional Council's regular monthly water quality monitoring.
4. Visit each landowner associated with a protected area at least once every three years.

## 5.4. Indigenous biodiversity

The Lake Taupō Zone is unique in that it has reached a mature stage of environmental management. One of the next elements to focus on to enhance catchment health is the maintenance and protection of indigenous biodiversity. Maintaining and protecting the indigenous biodiversity of the Lake Taupō Zone will preserve its intrinsic indigenous biodiversity value as well as protecting the ecosystem services that a healthy ecosystem provides. Thus we need to provide for biosecurity and biodiversity values in a way that is similar to how we provide for flood protection. Intact natural systems provide the best protection for the Taupō catchment's unstable catchment soils. There has been significant indigenous biodiversity restoration work already completed in the Taupō catchment and there is potential for many diverse biodiversity projects within the zone. Active management of biodiversity is essential to ensure overall maintenance of biodiversity and to promote long term catchment health.

The Lake Taupō Zone contains a high proportion of the region's high priority biodiversity areas, and this includes almost all of the water courses coming into the catchment which are all designated high priority. The majority of high priority biodiversity areas in the zone are owned by the Department of Conservation (DOC) or are on Māori land. Fifty-six per cent of the catchment is Māori owned, including the lake, making DOC and Tūwharetoa key strategic partners.

The Taupō area has been significantly modified by human use, but many important biodiversity features remain including Lake Taupō itself, some very important rivers, Pureora to the west and Kaimanawa to the east. Taupō is also the only zone in the region that contains alpine and subalpine habitats. In addition, the tussock lands of the central plateau leading up to the mountainous country are unique for the North Island and are significantly under threat from pests.

Geothermal biodiversity is an important feature of the zone, with the Taupō and Upper Waikato zones holding 80 per cent of New Zealand's geothermal vegetation. The geothermal areas in the Taupō zone are unique, highly visible, highly visited, and generally located close to urban areas.

Lakeshore and wetland ecosystems within the zone are seriously depleted in comparison to historic extent, thus any natural areas in those locations are important.

Pressures on biodiversity include the effects of pest species and land use change and development. In addition there is a tension between species such as deer and trout which are valued for their recreational value but have a potential impact on biodiversity.

There is also significant biodiversity risk associated with OSPRI withdrawing its TBfree possum control from private and public land (valuable biodiversity areas) around Taupō. The possum levels in Taupō have been significantly reduced and are now below 2 per cent **RTC**, and the area is no longer considered TB reactive or under movement control. Biodiversity has been benefiting from OSPRI's work and biodiversity values have gone up dramatically where possums have been removed. The council is currently working with DOC to determine potential approaches to managing these areas.

Partnerships and collaboration with iwi, landowners and industry provide the greatest opportunities to achieve biodiversity objectives and to access additional funding. Several key partnerships already exist (e.g. DOC and Tūwharetoa) and there are opportunities to build on these. Landowners are voluntarily protecting biodiversity values on their land and their contributions should be recognised.

Whilst good information is held on areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, the council is currently undertaking a broader inventory of regional biodiversity. Completion of this stocktake will provide good information on the extent of the biodiversity resource. Overlaying this information with what is known in regards to water quality and soil conservation will enable the more ready identification of areas where works can target multiple benefits. There is an opportunity to look at the ways that biodiversity relates to tourism, catchment works, biosecurity, soil retention, and ecosystem services to make greater use of opportunities to achieve multiple objectives

The maintenance and enhancement of indigenous biodiversity will be an increased focus for works in the catchment. The majority of biodiversity within the catchment is located on Māori land, within the conservation estate or on private land. As such, collaborative partnerships with DOC, Tūwharetoa and landowners will be critical to achieving the council's biodiversity objectives.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Support initiatives that recognise the voluntary actions of landowners to maintain and enhance biodiversity e.g. the land for wildlife initiative	Zone Manager	Annually

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Stage biodiversity protection and restoration in a collaborative manner: Key relationships with the Department of Conservation, Tūwharetoa and community groups will be prioritised, well-resourced and supported by strong communication	Zone Manager	Annually
Encourage the council to become the facilitating agency working to protect high value biodiversity in the zone, while recognising that much of the responsibilities for action lies with landowners and other agencies	LTCC	As required
Support the regional biodiversity prioritisation process and review the biodiversity and biosecurity recommendations set out in this plan within three years to ensure consistency with this process	Zone Manager	3 years from date of this Zone Plan
Provide advice information and communication services that guide biodiversity partnerships and assist the council to access regional or community funding for biodiversity and facilitate the achievement of long term biodiversity goals	Zone Manager	Ongoing
The following principles will be applied when prioritising biodiversity management activities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Connectivity (the connectivity of habitats and areas)</li> <li>- Extent of habitat</li> <li>- Condition of the ecosystem</li> </ul>	Biodiversity Managers	Ongoing
Consider developing a shared vision of biodiversity priorities with key partners	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Actively support innovation and effective investment to achieve protection of high biodiversity values	Biodiversity Managers	Ongoing

### Implementation actions

Action	Who	When
The protection and enhancement of geothermal areas will be prioritised, including through collaborative opportunities wherever possible	Biodiversity Managers	Ongoing

### Monitoring indicators

1. Number of projects targeting biodiversity maintenance and protection.

## 5.5. Lake foreshore

Like coastal situations, the shoreline around Lake Taupō is also subject to natural processes of erosion and accretion. These processes are particularly noticeable around river mouths which can be very dynamic environments.

Historically, people have settled close to Lake Taupō and river mouths. While this close proximity has not traditionally been a significant issue, the cycles of erosion and accretion in close proximity to built-up areas has raised the level of risk. This has been exacerbated by the extensive removal of riparian vegetation throughout the catchment. Similarly, the knowledge of the potential flood risks in the future has also improved, placing a greater emphasis on planning for these. The management of the Lake Taupō foreshore is a multi-agency issue with significant science and policy behind it. It can be a highly emotive and visual issue that has potential environmental, economic and recreational impacts.

The Lake Taupō Erosion and Flood Strategy was ratified by Waikato Regional Council and Taupō District Council in 2009. The strategy defines the roles of each agency and provides principles to inform future decision making. The nature and causes of foreshore erosion have been extensively researched and this research forms the basis of the strategy. This research has shown that lake foreshore erosion is caused by a complex range of natural and human factors including land use, geology, tectonic movement, wind, lake levels, sediment, climate change and lakeshore development. The strategy focuses on protecting infrastructure and amenity values on the foreshore, not addressing the causes of foreshore erosion itself.

Under Project Watershed (2002) Taupō District Council is responsible for foreshore management on land under public management, and it receives Waikato Regional Council funding (45 per cent) for foreshore management works. Waikato Regional Council part funds these works in recognition that the lake is part of a managed catchment system.

There is a high level of public interest in foreshore management and protection works. Given this and the range of agencies involved in foreshore management it is beneficial that these agencies work together.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
<p>Support Taupō District Council in the development and delivery of a programme of works to address areas of lake foreshore erosion as soon as practicable including by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- encouraging the development of a staged work plan</li> <li>- exploring a range of funding options</li> <li>- communicating risks of inaction</li> </ul>	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Continue to be involved in lake foreshore management in recognition of the complexity of the issue and the potential relationship of foreshore management works and activities with other zone activities	Zone Manager	Ongoing
<p>Adopt an advocacy role for Lake foreshore management by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- supporting the Lake Taupō Erosion and Flood Strategy in reserve lakeshore planning</li> <li>- actively engaging with organisations who are reviewing or seeking to undertake works that may affect the foreshore</li> </ul>	LTCC	Ongoing
Advocate for continuing collection of rates funds for foreshore works and using council reserves to accelerate the implementation of an agreed work programme	LTCC	Ongoing
Advocate for a delay in the scheduled foreshore strategy review to allow for a focus on actioning works and enabling priority risk areas to be addressed	LTCC	Ongoing

### Monitoring indicators

1. In collaboration with Taupō District Council, develop and maintain an active work plan targeting areas of concern affected or potentially affected by lake foreshore flooding or erosion.

## 5.6. Natural hazards management

Waikato Regional Council and Taupō District Council have shared roles in natural hazards management. Waikato Regional Council's role is to identify, collate, analyse and provide regional scale hazard information and advice to stakeholders, the general public and civil defence and emergency management agencies. The regional council also has flood event management responsibilities. Taupō District Council has the responsibility of controlling land use to reduce the impact of natural hazards.

There are a range of natural hazards that could occur in Taupō. The most prevalent hazards within the zone are lake and river flooding, and volcanic hazards<sup>2</sup>. In addition to individual hazards there is also the potential for **multiple co-occurring hazards** to have compounding impacts. The impacts on the zone of hazards could include injury and loss of life, infrastructure and property damage and potential impact on economic activity.

The most frequently experienced hazard within the zone is river and lake flooding, closely followed by lake foreshore erosion and accretion. These hazards are likely to be affected by future weather variations including projected changes caused by climate change. The council is required to have particular regard<sup>3</sup> to the effects of climate change, and the potential effects of climate change should be factored into zone management activities including the understanding of natural hazards.

The Lake Taupō Zone also plays a role in mitigating and/or responding to natural hazards experienced in other parts of the region. Lake Taupō is considered part of a managed system. As such, in times of high river flow the water level of Lake Taupō is held high to reduce the impact of flooding or high river levels on downstream communities. In addition, it is recognised that in a severe tsunami event the Lake Taupō zone would likely receive people evacuating from lower lying areas.

The LTCCC has an interest in the management of the full range of natural hazards. Whilst the zone plan has a direct role in the management of river and lake flooding and responding to lake foreshore

---

<sup>2</sup> Refer to Appendix Two for additional hazard descriptions.

<sup>3</sup> The Waikato Regional Policy Statement Implementation Method 4.1.13 requires local authorities to recognise and provide for the projected effects of climate change, having particular regard to: [...] b) projected increase in rainfall intensity, taking into account most recent national guidance and assuming a minimum increase in temperature of 2.1 C by 2090 (relative to 1990 levels, [...])

erosion, it is also relevant for the LTCC to understand natural hazard risk generally and where necessary advocate for natural hazard management consistent with the zone vision.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
Request that a Taupō Zone Hazard Management Plan be prepared	Zone Manager	2018
Take a multi-hazard management approach when approaching natural hazard management	Natural Hazard Manager	Ongoing

Monitoring indicators
1. The percentage of the community aware of potential natural hazards within the zone.

## 5.7. River management

River management refers to the council's river management activities outside of the two major flood control schemes on the Tongariro and Tauranga-Taupō rivers (which are dealt with under Asset Management).

As defined in Project Watershed:

*“River management involves works and services in relation to streams and rivers to achieve stability, management of flows and integration of a range of activities. There are two major categories of river management:*

- *routine river maintenance – provides for an annual and ongoing programme of low level river management activity including annual river inspections, removal of obstructions, vegetative management and minor erosion control works*
- *river improvement – provides for more substantial capital works including willow clearing over a significant length of channel, channel enlargements or major erosion control structures.”*

For the purpose of this zone plan, river management deals with the river channel and the area of the margin that affects bank stability and channel capacity.

There are over 40 rivers that drain into Lake Taupō. The council only becomes involved in river management activities on private, trust or Department of Conservation land when there is potential for downstream consequences from any upstream land use.

Project Watershed prescribes the current funding model for these activities. Routine maintenance such as removing stream blockages and soft engineering works to stabilise banks will be undertaken by the council. However, where the need is for hard engineering works community contributions will be sought. Each request for funding is considered on a case by case basis. Typically river management works are a joint venture with the landowner or community.

The council inspects and provide routine river maintenance for the following rivers:

- Tongariro
- Tauranga-Taupō
- Waiotaka (involved in debris removal)
- Tokaanu (debris removal, vegetation)
- Waimarino

- Waitahanui<sup>4</sup>
- Kuratau
- Hinemaiaia
- Hangirito.

When undertaking river management activities the council works to allow rivers to run as naturally as possible. The council has a preference to manage the sustainability of the riverbed and banks to ensure the river continues to follow natural processes.

River breakouts can be a natural process, however when this impacts on people or property the council is often requested to intervene. It is important in these situations that the council engages with the affected communities to ensure communication of risk of any potential breakout. Currently the council is engaging with the community in relation to the Tongariro River mouth which is threatening to breakout.

The behaviour of rivers is unpredictable and can be significantly affected by storm and flood events. This is likely to be exacerbated by the projected impacts of climate change. It is therefore difficult to predict the quantum of river maintenance works required in any one year, which has challenged resource allocation.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
The council will bring the outcomes of river management risk assessments to the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee for guidance on appropriate community input into the risk management responses	Zone Manager Principal Technical Advisor	As required
Maintain the current flexible split funding approach for river management works by evaluation of potential projects on a case-by-case basis. The evaluation will acknowledge that projects should be:	Zone Manager	Ongoing

<sup>4</sup> The council is responsible for river improvement works on the Waitahanui system, which is a community owned scheme to which the Waikato Regional Council contributed 50 per cent for erosion protection works at the river mouth. The council does not own the asset but is responsible for maintenance.

Implementation actions		
Action	Who	When
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Initiated by the community</li> <li>- targeted to Project Watershed river management objectives</li> <li>- achievable within the short term (3 years)</li> </ul>		
Continue to take a proactive, public risk based approach with regards to prioritising river management funding. The level of council funding for projects on private land will align with the level of risk to the public good	Zone Manager	Ongoing
Recommends that funds from the Catchment Oversight Fund be used to pay off the historical debt in the River Management Reserve	LTCC	Completed by Dec 2017

Monitoring indicators
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Community and stakeholders are aware of and understand the role river management works play in achieving the vision for the Lake Taupō catchment.</li> <li>2. Area of river and/or stream bank defined as having high erosion potential.</li> </ol>

## 6. FUNDING, MONITORING AND REVIEW

### 6.1. Funding

Waikato Regional Council collects rates (general and targeted) for river management and improvement, soil conservation works and catchment oversight, based on areas of benefit and activities that contribute to the matters being managed<sup>5</sup>.

The strategies and actions identified in this plan and funded by Waikato Regional Council will be implemented under the current levels of funding allocated to the Lake Taupō zone. No additional funding has been sought from general or targeted rates in the 2015-2025 LTP. Work programmes and funding levels will be subject to review.

The council will also actively explore opportunities for co-funding of projects with partner agencies. Opportunities for funding will be explored and actioned as appropriate.

### 6.2. Monitoring and review

This zone plan will be subject to a full review every six years and a limited review three years after each full review.

Monitoring of the zone plan will be ongoing and will focus on demonstrating progress towards the vision of this plan, and completion of actions to measure the degree of implementation of the plan. Measures to be used for monitoring are set out in sections 4 and 5 of this plan.

The results of monitoring will be reported annually to the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee and the Integrated Catchment Management Committee. A three-yearly summary report will be published prior to each review of the zone plan. The annual reports and three-yearly summary will be used to inform future reviews of this zone plan.

---

<sup>5</sup> Refer to the "Project Watershed Level of Service and Funding Policy." Docs# 752002.

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

### **Annul Exceedance Probability (AEP)**

The probability of a certain size of flood flow occurring in a single year. A 1 per cent AEP flood flow has a 1 per cent, or 1-in-100, chance of occurring in any one year, and a 10 per cent chance of occurring in any 10 year period.

### **Long term plan (LTP)**

Established under the Local Government Act and is the key strategic funding document of local authorities.

### **Multi-hazard management approach**

- An approach that considers more than one hazard in a given place (ideally progressing to consider all known hazards) and the interrelations between these hazards, including their simultaneous or cumulative occurrence and their potential interactions.
- A multi-hazard approach should also consider the dynamic nature of vulnerability. For instance, following a primary hazard event exposed assets will have an increased vulnerability to subsequent hazards.

### **Residual trap catch (RTC)**

Residual trap catch was developed to provide a standardised method for estimating relative densities of possums.

### **Soil compartment**

An area of private land under formal protection for the purposes of protecting and enhancing the natural functioning of catchments, preserving water quality, reducing contaminants or sediment entering waterbodies, or for the maintenance or protection of biodiversity.

## REFERENCES

### Reports

Environment Waikato (1998). *Asset Management Plan - Lake Taupō Catchment Control Scheme*. Environment Waikato Policy Series 97/09 (DM# 514081).

Environment Waikato & Taupō District Council (2009). *Lake Taupō Erosion and Flood Strategy* (DM#1590204).

Funding Policy Review - Lake Taupō Foreshore. (DM# 3270225).

Integrated Catchment Management Directorate (2014). *Infrastructure strategy 2015-2045 - flood protection and control works*. Waikato Regional Council Policy Series 2014-09 (DM# 3233673).

Vant, B (2013). *Recent changes in the water quality of Lake Taupō and its inflowing streams*. Nz Journal of Forestry, Vol, 58 No. 2.

Waikato Regional Council (2014). *Upper Waikato Zone Plan*. Waikato Regional Council Policy Series 2014/05 (ISSN 2230-4339).

Waikato Regional Council (2015). *Lake Taupō asset management plan*. Waikato Regional Council Policy Series 2015/04 (DM# 3156045).

Waikato Regional Council (2016). *West Coast Zone Plan*. Waikato Regional Council Technical Report 2016/08 (ISSN 2230-4355)

2020 Joint Management Group, 2005. *Taupō-nui-a-Tia 2020 Action Plan – An Integrated Sustainable Development Strategy for the Lake Taupō Catchment*. Tūwharetoa Maori Trust Board, Waikato Regional Council.

### Internal papers

McLeod, A., (2013) *Upper Waikato River Zone Management Plan Inception Report*. Waikato Regional Council report (DM# 237594/v3).

Hill, R. & Bowman, D. (2015). *Waikato regional prioritisation project: Phase 2 overview*. Waikato Regional Council Internal Series 2015/xx (DM# 3711315).

Hill R, Borman D., Neilson, K., and Leathwick, J. (2015). *Waikato regional prioritisation project: preliminary results*. Waikato Regional Council Internal Series 2015/08 (DM# 3311868)

WRC (2015). *Zone Management Plan Template (Draft)*. Waikato Regional Council report (DM# 3573509/v2).

Vant, B., Noiton, D. 2012). *Report to Resource Use and Environmental Monitoring Committee*. Waikato Regional Council report (DM# 2253954).

## Appendix One Legislative and policy framework

This appendix provides further information on the legislation and policy that affects the management of the Lake Taupō Zone.

### Resource Management Act

The Resource Management Act (RMA) came into force in October 1991 and is New Zealand's main piece of legislation that sets out how we should manage our environment. The RMA was created to achieve a more coordinated, streamlined and comprehensive approach to environmental management.

### Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act

The overriding purpose of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 is to make provision for the conservation of soil resources, the prevention of damage by erosion and to make better provision for the protection of property from damage by floods.

### Local Government Act

The Local Government Act 2002 provides the general framework and powers under which New Zealand's 78 democratically elected and accountable local authorities operate. The purpose of this Act is to provide for democratic and effective local government that recognises the diversity of New Zealand communities. It provides a framework and powers for local authorities to decide which activities they undertake and the manner in which they will undertake them.

It requires local authorities to prepare a 10-year LTP, which is to be reviewed every three years. The LTP is designed to integrate decision-making and include information on the key policies of the local authority. It also describes linkages between activities and how they are funded. The Act also requires certain decisions, such as commencing a significant activity, to be undertaken in accordance with the LTP or by way of an amendment to the LTP.

The financial management provisions require local authorities to manage their revenues, expenses, assets, liabilities, investments and general financial dealings prudently and in a manner that promotes the current and future interests of the community. Local authorities are also required to make adequate and effective provision for their expenditure needs that are identified in the LTP. The Act requires local authorities to consult their communities about funding and financial policies. It also requires consultation on the types and levels of services councils propose and how they will be

paid for, and requires councils to explain to their communities the relationship between costs and levels of service provision.

### Biosecurity Act

The Biosecurity Act 1993, administered by the Ministry for Primary Industries, is the primary legislation for biosecurity activities, providing a range of powers, duties and obligations. The Act was amended in 2012, introducing among other things new policy instruments such as the national policy direction and pest pathway management plans; and a requirement for the Crown to comply with good neighbour rules.

### National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014 (NPS FM)

The NPS FM requires regional councils to formulate freshwater objectives, set limits or targets and ensure over-allocation of water resources is avoided (or addressed where it has already occurred). Freshwater objectives must give effect to the NPS FM objectives and describe the state regional communities want for fresh water in the future.

Some of the key requirements of the NPS FM are to:

- safeguard fresh water's life-supporting capacity, ecosystem processes, and indigenous species
- safeguard the health of people who come into contact with the water through recreation
- maintain or improve the overall quality of fresh water within a region
- protect the significant values of wetlands and outstanding freshwater bodies
- follow a specific process (sometimes referred to as the National Objectives Framework or NOF) for identifying the values that tāngata whenua and communities have for water, and using a specified set of water quality measures (called attributes) to set objectives
- set limits on resource use (e.g. how much water can be taken or how much of a contaminant can be discharged) to meet limits over time and ensure they continue to be met
- determine the appropriate set of methods to meet the objectives and limits
- take an integrated approach to managing land use, fresh water, and coastal water

- involve iwi and hapū in decision-making and management of fresh water<sup>6</sup>.

### National Policy Statement for Biodiversity (Proposed)

The proposed National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity (NPS) sets out the objective and policies about managing natural and physical resources to maintain indigenous biological diversity (biodiversity) under the Resource Management Act 1991.

It is intended to provide clearer direction to local authorities on their responsibilities for managing indigenous biodiversity. It outlines policies and decision-making frameworks for identifying and managing indigenous biodiversity found outside the public conservation estate.

Local authorities would be required to manage the effects of activities through district and regional plans and resource consent decisions (or be satisfied that effects are managed by other methods) to ensure there is no net loss of significant indigenous biodiversity.

The proposed NPS has not passed as legislation, and as such does not have legal effect.

### Waikato Regional Policy Statement (RPS)

The RPS is the council's key RMA document, identifying the key resource management issues for the region. District and regional plans are required to give effect to the RPS. Implementation Method 4.1.12 of the RPS sets out that council should, where appropriate, seek consistency with the objectives and policies of the RPS in zone management plans.

The RPS has a number of objectives and policies which are relevant to integrated catchment management issues within the zone, including the management of fresh water, indigenous biodiversity, natural hazards and soil conservation. Objective 3.1 and Chapter 4 relate specifically to integrated management, however, a significant number of other objectives are relevant to the management of the zone and the statutory purpose of the RPS includes identification of policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources.

Relevant implementation methods in Chapter 4 of the RPS include:

- 4.1.3 (Co-ordinated approach): WRC will seek opportunities to align its own activities, including the provision of works and services, regulation, education programmes and environmental initiatives, to maximise the benefits achieved.

---

<sup>6</sup> <http://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/national-policy-statement/about-nps>

- 4.1.6 (Advocacy and education): WRC will promote an integrated approach to resource management, including by promoting sustainable land management practices; and educating landowners/managers about the adverse effects of land use practices, including off-site and cumulative effects.
- 4.1.13 (Incorporating effects of climate change): Local authorities should recognise and provide for the projected effects of climate change, having particular regard to historic long term local climate data and projected increase in rainfall intensity.

### Waikato Regional Plan (WRP)

The Waikato Regional Plan contains policy and methods to manage the natural and physical resources of the region. Changes to the RMA since the current plan was developed mean the WRP must now give effect to the RPS. This will be addressed by the current review, with changes to the regional plan expected to be notified in three stages commencing 2017/18.

Waikato Regional Council's "Variation No. 5 - Lake Taupō Catchment" to the Waikato Regional Plan was proposed in 2005, and became operative in 2011. Variation 5 was a response to the threat to Lake Taupō from increasing nitrogen leaching from land uses in the catchment. Even maintaining the lake's water quality required a 20 per cent reduction in the amount of nitrogen coming from farmland and urban areas. The variation is now incorporated into the Waikato Regional Plan (Chapter 3.10). Objective 1 states that by 2080, water quality in the lake is restored to 2001 levels (indicated by nitrogen, phosphorus and chlorophyll a levels, and secchi depth). Objective 2 recognises that in order to achieve the long term water quality goal in Objective 1, activities which result in nitrogen leaching, particularly farming activities, need to be managed.

Water allocation issues are a core part of the council's natural resource management responsibilities. There is a need to ensure there is enough water in waterways to provide for such things as the health of aquatic ecology, ensuring towns and businesses are catered for, electricity is generated efficiently and that farmers can work their land successfully.

### National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015

Following reforms to the Biosecurity Act in 2012, the National Policy Direction for Pest Management was introduced in 2015 with the aim of improving the alignment and consistency of pest management plans and programmes across New Zealand<sup>7</sup>.

The national direction:

- sets out the framework for developing national and regional pest or pathway management plans and small-scale management programmes
- clarifies the Biosecurity Act's requirements for these plans
- ensures that plans are aligned and consistent, both nationally and regionally
- outlines the requirements for developing good neighbour rules (to manage pests spilling across boundaries) in regional pest management plans.

Regional pest management plans must be consistent with the national direction.

### Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan 2014-2024 (RPMP)

The purpose of the RPMP is to set out the strategic and statutory framework for the effective management of pest plants and animals in the region, so as to minimise the actual or potential adverse effects of pests on the environment and maximise the effectiveness of individual pest management action by way of a regionally coordinated approach.

Pest management is considered to be a tool that assists in achieving many of Waikato Regional Council's wider objectives (such as supporting agricultural productivity, maintaining and enhancing biodiversity and minimising flood risks through enhanced soil stability).

### 2015-2025 Long Term Plan (LTP)

A long term plan is a strategic planning document describing the activities a local authority will fund and provide to achieve desired community outcomes over a 10 year period. Community outcomes are the outcomes that a local authority aims to achieve in meeting the current and future needs of communities for good quality local infrastructure, local public services and performance of regulatory functions. They form the basis for the council's service delivery, thus determining the

---

<sup>7</sup> <https://www.mpi.govt.nz/protection-and-response/biosecurity/national-policy-direction-for-pest-management/>

levels of service provided to the community. A long term plan is reviewed and prepared every three years, with the next review due in 2018.

Through the current LTP the council is focusing on strategic investments that will strengthen the region's future. Importantly, there's a strong focus through the plan on improving water quality and restoring biodiversity. Encouraging regional development is also a priority with the council working with others to help the region realise the potential of its prime location and the quality of its businesses, people and natural assets. Opportunities to partner with iwi, businesses, education and research institutions, community, local and central government organisations to deliver the best outcomes for people now and into the future have been sought.

The community outcomes in the LTP were developed to be consistent with the three themes from the council's mission statement – healthy environment, strong economy and vibrant communities.

#### Healthy environment

1. Land use is sustainable.
2. It is safe to swim and take kai from all fresh water.
3. The Waikato has become predator free, in line with the New Zealand 2050 target, without compromising indigenous biodiversity.
4. The full range of ecosystem types, including land, water and coastal and marine ecosystems, is in a healthy and functional state.
5. All soil quality indicators are trending positive.

#### Strong economy

1. By 2034, household median incomes are above the New Zealand average (Waikato Means Business).
2. By 2034, value added per capita will grow by 2.8 per cent per annum so that the Waikato region is in the upper third of regions in New Zealand for economic performance (Waikato Means Business).
3. Economic growth ensures natural capital and ecosystem services are maintained.
4. The Waikato region is moving towards a low carbon economy.
5. We are achieving the best use of the region's fresh water.
6. New investment is attracted to the region through improved reputation and partnerships.

7. The Waikato economy benefits from having Auckland as our neighbour.

Vibrant communities

1. Our diverse communities feel like a valued part of the Waikato and take pride in the region.
2. Communities are empowered and supported to take action on agreed outcomes.
3. Communities are less vulnerable and more resilient to natural hazards, the effects of climate change and changes to society and the economy.
4. People and communities are well connected to each other, to services (including health and other essential services), and to opportunities including recreation, education and jobs.
5. There is increased benefit from the use and protection of our amenity and recreational features and values.
6. Significant reduction in boating fatalities and road related fatalities and serious injuries.
7. We support all parts of the Waikato to be as successful as they can be.
8. Co-governance with iwi is meaningful and effective.

The Taupō Zone Plan has considered these outcomes and contributes to their achievement.

## Appendix Two Relevant natural hazards

Hazard	Description
<b>Volcanic</b>	<p>The region is vulnerable to a number of volcanic hazards from various sources both within and outside the region. The most widespread, frequent and likely volcanic hazard is ash fall. Near source volcanic hazards include ballistic projectiles, ash fall, lahars, lava flows, pyroclastic flows and surges and debris avalanches.</p> <p>The primary sources of volcanic threat from within the region are located within the Taupō zone and include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Tongariro Volcanic Centre (the most active volcanic centre in New Zealand includes the recently active Mount Ruapehu, Mount Ngauruhoe and Mount Tongariro).</li> <li>– Taupō Volcanic Centre, a rhyolitic volcanic centre located in the south of the Waikato region, partially occupied by Lake Taupō. While there have been no eruptions in historic times, the pre-historic eruption record shows there have been numerous catastrophic eruption events – the most recent being in 180 AD.</li> <li>– Maroa Volcanic Centre: The Maroa Volcanic Centre is a rhyolitic volcanic centre located to the north of Lake Taupō, and consists of rhyolite domes and calderas. Although active, it is not considered to be a major hazard area due to the long timeframes between events.</li> </ul>
<b>Caldera unrest</b>	<p>Caldera unrest consists of earthquakes, ground deformation where gas flux occurs frequently and can pose hazards which need to be adequately managed. It does not include eruptive activity.</p>
<b>Geothermal</b>	<p>Geothermal activity that negatively impacts social, cultural, economic or environmental outcomes. Geothermal hazards include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• scalding hot water</li> <li>• geyser eruptions</li> <li>• amoebic meningitis</li> <li>• geothermal chemicals in water</li> <li>• boiling mud</li> <li>• steam and other gases</li> <li>• geothermally altered ground</li> <li>• landslides</li> <li>• hydrothermal eruptions<sup>8</sup>.</li> </ul>

<sup>8</sup> For more information please refer to <https://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/Services/Regional-services/Regional-hazards-and-emergency-management/Geothermal-activity/#Heading1>

Hazard	Description
<b>Subsidence (tectonics)</b>	Dropping of the ground level caused by tectonic movements. This can increase the risk of flooding.
<b>Flooding</b>	A flow that overtops the natural or artificial banks in any part of a stream or river. This includes high sediment concentration events (such as debris flows) that are triggered by landslides.
<b>Lakeshore erosion</b>	Accelerated changes in the equilibrium of the foreshore of a lake related to a number of natural and anthropocentric factors.
<b>Earthquakes</b>	<p>Earthquakes are natural hazards that occur when the earth's tectonic plates move against each other. They disturb the earth's surface, potentially putting people and property at risk from damage.</p> <p>The Waikato region includes some of the most seismically active parts of New Zealand with four large active faults including two within the Taupō Zone – the Ngangaiho/Rangipo fault and the Taupō Belt. The area between Taupō and Rotorua is the most vulnerable part of the region for earthquakes. It contains many active fault lines running in a north-east direction.</p>
<b>Land instability</b>	<p>Land shape (geomorphology) and composition (geology) are the main factors that contribute to land instability. Common examples of land instability include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• landsliding (mass movement downslope of material under the influence of gravity), including rotational slides, translational slides, slumps, flows, falls</li> <li>• subsidence (can occur on flat land as well as sloping, usually the result of draining or overloading weak soils)</li> <li>• tunnel gully erosion (tunnels form below the slope surface and eventually collapse)</li> <li>• stream and river bank erosion</li> <li>• coastal erosion</li> <li>• topsoil erosion.</li> </ul>
<b>Sudden weather events (snow, rainfall, wind)</b>	Weather events which restrict or prevent a human activity (adversely impact on social, cultural, economic or environmental outcomes).
<b>Prolonged weather events (drought)</b>	<p>Periods of prolonged abnormally low precipitation resulting in below average soil moisture levels.</p> <p>A drought is generally defined as a shortage of rainfall over an extended period of time, which restricts or prevents a human activity. This can lead to</p>

Hazard	Description
	a reduced volume of water in water bodies such as rivers, dry ground and a lack of plant growth. These impacts affect activities such as agriculture and power generation, and can have flow on effects to other sectors of the community.
<b>Seiche</b>	A standing wave in an enclosed or partially enclosed body of water. Seiches and seiche-related phenomena have been observed on lakes, reservoirs, swimming pools, bays and seas. The key requirement for formation of a seiche is that the body of water be at least partially bounded, allowing natural phenomena to form a standing wave.

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 22 10 47B

**Date:** 7 June 2017

**To:** Chief Executive Officer

**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management

**Subject:** Waikato Regional Council comments on Department of Conservation's draft Threatened Species Strategy

**Section:** **A (Committee has delegated authority to make decision)**

---

## 1. Purpose

The purpose of this report is to advise the committee of initial comments by Policy and Natural Heritage staff on the Department of Conservation's (DOC) draft Threatened Species Strategy. A more detailed Waikato Regional Council submission will be considered by the Strategy and Policy Committee prior to being submitted to DOC by the 31 July 2017 deadline.

## 2. Recommendation:

That the report "Waikato Regional Council comments on Department of Conservation's draft Threatened Species Strategy" (Doc# 10416434 dated 7 June 2017) be received for information.

## 3. Background

A draft Threatened Species Strategy was launched by the Minister of Conservation on 10 May 2017. Building on past conservation successes and the recently-launched national Predator Free 2050 programme, this strategy sets out some goals, strategic themes and actions through which further progress in arresting biodiversity declines and averting further extinctions may be made. A list of 150 threatened species prioritised for action is appended to the strategy.

This draft strategy is topical in relation to council's declared intent to maintain a full range of ecosystem types in a healthy and functional state, and to advance a predator free Waikato in line with the national predator free 2050 target. Current deliberations around the roles and responsibilities of regional councils in relation to biodiversity are also pertinent.

#### 4. General comments

The lack of any nationally-applied objective basis for setting threatened species management priorities makes the development of this strategy an important initiative. The opportunity for council to comment is topical given current deliberations about how regional councils can best contribute to biodiversity conservation outcomes. While the strategy emphasises the importance of partnerships, it is disappointing that little mention is made of either existing or potential contributions of councils to threatened species recovery – and predator management and habitat protection and restoration in particular.

Waikato Regional Council is a key player in biodiversity conservation in this region, providing coordination, advice and financial support to landowners, iwi and community groups undertaking conservation projects. We also work closely with our DOC colleagues, augmenting pest control and habitat protection outcomes on public conservation land, with our focus on working with landowners and communities on adjacent private lands. We have significant capacity in managing habitats at various scales.

There appear to be opportunities to better align DOC and Waikato Regional Council roles and responsibilities in conserving biodiversity in relation to legislative mandates (e.g. Conservation Act, RMA, Biosecurity Act) and in relation to some strategic directions (e.g. facilitating partnerships). Other complimentary interests include:

- protecting biodiversity on public conservation land (DOC) and private land (Waikato Regional Council)
- declared intentions by both agencies to manage biodiversity at landscape scales, and to include a focus on ecosystems (and ecosystem processes); and
- increasing stakeholder recognition of the priority (and urgency) of environmental management, including preventing further biodiversity declines and extinctions.

Further dialogue at national, regional and local levels focused on implementing the Threatened Species Strategy may be productive in capitalising on these, and possibly other opportunities.

Although government has recently announced several related financial packages (including the Predator Free 2050 programme), funds have yet to be allocated specifically for DOC to implement this strategy. Leadership by DOC and a commitment to implement the strategy will be important if existing partnerships are to be strengthened, and new ones forged. Regional councils will naturally be interested in ensuring an appropriate balance of taxpayer and ratepayer funds are committed, alongside financial support from elsewhere.

Council staff look forward to contributing to a Waikato Regional Council submission that appropriately reflects our roles and responsibilities, and the interests of our stakeholders. We also look forward to ongoing dialogue about how we can contribute to achieving shared priorities in our collaborative efforts to protect and restore the region's threatened species.

---

*Patrick Whaley*  
*Manager Integrated Catchment Services*

---

*Clare Crickett*  
*Director Integrated Catchment Management*

Attachments:

1. New Zealand's Threatened Species Strategy; draft for consultation (Doc# 10416434)
2. Initial staff comments on draft threatened species strategy (Doc# 10579486)



# NEW ZEALAND'S THREATENED SPECIES STRATEGY

DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION



Department of  
Conservation  
*Te Papa Atawhai*

Toitū te marae a Tāne-Mahuta,  
Toitū te marae a Tangaroa,  
Toitū te tangata.

If the land is well  
and the sea is well,  
the people will thrive.



# From the Minister



New Zealand's unique plants, birds, reptiles and other animal species help us to define who we are as a nation. Familiar emblems include our flightless nocturnal kiwi and kākāpō, and the silver fern proudly worn by our sportspeople and etched on our war graves and memorials.

They are our national taonga, living treasures

found nowhere else on Earth – the unique creations of millions of years of geographical isolation.

The wildlife on our islands of Aotearoa evolved in a world without teeth, a paradise which for all its stunning beauty and diversity was not equipped to cope with the arrival of humans.

The hitchhikers we brought with us – including rats, stoats, possums and introduced plants – have been very destructive for our native species. In the last 750 years, the roll call of the lost is grim. Gone forever are giant moa and Haast's eagle as well as the tiny flightless wren, the striking huia, at least 70 other birds and unknown numbers of plants, insects and reptiles.

Today, we are aware that much of our wildlife remains under grave threat. More than 800 native species are officially classified as 'threatened'. The dedicated staff of the Department of Conservation, with support from iwi, partners and hundreds of hard-working community groups, are all doing their best to hold the line.

There have been many notable success stories, such as the return of the kākāpō, black robin and takahē from the brink of extinction. But we must be vigilant and more proactive if we are to meet the ongoing challenges and threats to our vulnerable native species.

In 2016, the Government announced our intention to make New Zealand predator free by 2050. We committed to eradicating possums, rats and stoats, and enabling native species to breed, thrive and survive in the wild. We know it's not an easy task, but I believe this ambitious vision can be achieved by working together.

The latest to join forces with DOC, bringing a wealth of expertise in propagating and protecting our vulnerable plants, is the Botanic Gardens of Australia and New Zealand organisation, which has just signed an MOU with DOC to develop living collections of plants, collaborate on research and help develop a seed bank safeguarding all our native plant species.

While Predator Free 2050 is the single most significant and ambitious conservation programme in our history, it has to be part of a broader range of work if we are to succeed.

This draft Threatened Species Strategy is the Government's plan to halt decline and restore healthy, sustainable populations of native species. The Strategy looks at what steps are needed to restore those species at risk of extinction, and what we should do to prevent others from becoming threatened.

We are deliberately using the language of war because we are up against invasive enemies that are hard to defeat. If we are to save the creatures we love, we have to eradicate the predators intent on eating them to extinction.

In response to beech tree seeding 'mast' years we have launched the successful Battle for our Birds – pest control on a landscape scale. We have declared a War on Weeds with an annual list of the 'Dirty Dozen' to tackle invasive plants that are suffocating vast areas of our bush.

This Strategy builds on Predator Free 2050's targets, on New Zealand's international commitments to biodiversity and on all of DOC's threatened species work. We will commit to increasing the populations of 150 priority species by 2025 and to be actively managing 600 by 2030.

This Strategy is underpinned by the unrivalled scientific expertise and understanding of New Zealand scientists, backed up by the can-do attitude and innovation we know we can expect from New Zealanders. On my bedroom wall hangs a picture of a huia feather to remind me every day of how much is at risk.

As the great conservationist Don Merton once said of our native plants, birds and animals, "They are our national monuments. They are our Tower of London, our Arc de Triomphe, our pyramids. We don't have this ancient architecture that we can be proud of and swoon over in wonder, but what we do have is something that is far, far older than that. No one else has kiwi, no one else has kākāpō. They have been around for millions of years, if not thousands of millions of years. And once they are gone, they are gone forever. And it's up to us to make sure they never die out."

**The Honourable Maggie Barry ONZM**  
Minister of Conservation

# From the Director-General



I am pleased to present the Department of Conservation's draft Threatened Species Strategy – a milestone in New Zealand's journey towards a future where our threatened native species are restored to healthy populations.

Our nature defines us as New Zealanders. Much of our flora and fauna is found only in New

Zealand – it's our identity, our point of difference, and millions of visitors come to see it each year.

However, although we were the last large land mass to be colonised by humans, we have one of the worst rates of extinction in the world due to introduced predators and habitat loss. And right now, hundreds of our native species face the risk of extinction.

---

**New Zealand is the greatest  
living space on Earth.**

**Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a  
Aotearoa, hei wāhi noho i te ao.**

---

Like Conservation Minister Maggie Barry, I make no apology for using fighting words. We need to strike now if we are to win the war against invaders and restore our precious native species to health.

Partnerships are the key – this is a fight that DOC and other government agencies can't win alone. The draft Strategy pulls together the actions and activities of iwi, communities, businesses, philanthropists and government agencies, providing a platform to secure the future of our threatened species.

A chord was struck throughout the country last year when the Government announced its goal to rid New Zealand of possums, rats and stoats by 2050. This was a springboard for action, and we're now seeing more communities take up the predator-free challenge.

But as we strive towards a predator-free Utopia – a goal that will have huge economic and environmental benefits – we must keep sight of the species that make us unique. After all, our precious native species are the reason the first rumblings of a predator-free movement began.

When 2050 comes, we want to be there with all our native species, not just a fortunate, charismatic few. Our nature is a package. We cannot leave the future of our native species to chance.

With the draft Threatened Species Strategy, we have tried to reflect what New Zealanders value in our nature. Now we want to know what you think. What is it about New Zealand's natural environment that you hold dear? What are your hopes for the future of our native species? Have we got it right?

The Strategy is the first step, giving us a direction. We must unite to remove the threats to our native species and deliver a safe and secure future for generations yet to come.

**Lou Sanson**  
Director-General, Department of Conservation

---

# Contents

Predator Free 2050 – the springboard for protecting threatened species	2
The Strategy	4
<b>A LAND APART</b>	7
Our unique New Zealand	8
Trouble in paradise	10
The state of our species	12
We're all part of the solution	14
<b>A CALL TO ACTION</b>	17
Foundations for recovery	18
The right tools for the job	20
<b>THE PLAN OF ATTACK</b>	27
Setting goals	28
150 priority species	31
Strategic themes	32
Top 10 actions	40
<b>WE CAN WIN THIS</b>	41
150 priority threatened and at risk species	42

# Predator Free 2050 – the springboard for protecting threatened species

July 26, 2016 was a historic day for conservation and for New Zealand. It was on this day that the Prime Minister, Minister of Conservation, Minister for the Environment, Minister for Primary Industries and the Minister of Business, Innovation and Employment announced the goal of New Zealand being predator free by 2050. The announcement, which included funding and the new organisation Predator Free 2050 Ltd, resonated deeply with the public, as few things have done. It is no exaggeration that Predator Free 2050 gained world-wide attention as a bold and visionary move by New Zealand.

The deep chord that Predator Free 2050 has struck reflects New Zealanders' deep attachment to our species and landscapes. If there is a single

thing we can do for our threatened species, it is to eliminate the main mammalian predators – rats, stoats and possums. This makes Predator Free 2050 a galvanising game changer for conservation. However, while Predator Free 2050 is the fundamental platform for the work to protect our threatened species, it needs to be part of a broader suite of actions.

This draft Threatened Species Strategy sets out the key elements we need to fulfil to protect our precious unique species. Predator Free 2050 is a springboard that has created a wave of enthusiasm. This Strategy is about how we ride that wave as a country to achieve our ambitious goals for the species and ecosystems entrusted to our care.



## Investing to protect our species

Predator Free 2050 is a major investor in conservation. The aim of Predator Free 2050 Ltd is to sponsor long-term science and landscape-scale initiatives to achieve goals set for 2025 and 2050. The 2025 goals are to:

1. Increase by 1 million hectares the area of mainland New Zealand land where predators are suppressed, through Predator Free New Zealand projects
2. Demonstrate that predator eradication can be achieved in areas of mainland New Zealand of at least 20,000 hectares without the use of fences
3. Achieve eradication of all mammalian predators from New Zealand's island nature reserves
4. Develop a breakthrough science solution capable of eradicating at least one small mammal predator from the New Zealand mainland.

The company has been established with clear criteria, including maximising the benefits to threatened species and wider conservation from the predator control work it funds.

To achieve its goals, Predator Free 2050 Ltd needs to assess the relative value of proposed predator control opportunities for conservation. This draft Threatened Species Strategy is an important way of helping Predator Free 2050 Ltd to make those assessments.

This Strategy identifies 150 priority species and sets long-term targets for the number of species being protected. This can be used to help rank predator-

control projects according to the contribution they make in achieving the species goals. Not all conservation projects are of equal value. Some ecosystems contain numerous threatened species and a single project could achieve benefits for a greater number of species than other investments. Conservation, like any other investment, needs to be about smart targeting and maximising the benefit from scarce resources.

The Department of Conservation (DOC) has detailed knowledge of where many species live, the threats that exist in different areas and the positive impacts that will result from different actions such as predator control. The impact of various actions on many species can be modelled and costed. By using these tools, Predator Free 2050 Ltd will be able to assess how its funding is achieving the best results for threatened species and helping to meet the goals set out in this Strategy.

In addition to Predator Free NZ Ltd, the clear species goals set out in this Strategy will also guide decisions by:

- ▶ DOC
- ▶ Local councils in their biodiversity work
- ▶ Community groups undertaking conservation work
- ▶ Philanthropists and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) looking for high-impact conservation projects

This Threatened Species Strategy is therefore an important part of implementing Predator Free 2050. The final Strategy goals and prioritised species will guide a variety of organisations in their investment decisions.

# The Strategy

## Purpose

This Threatened Species Strategy sets out the New Zealand Government's plan to halt the decline in our threatened species and restore them to healthy populations. Building on existing commitments and programmes, the Strategy identifies further steps we need to take not only to restore those species that are already at risk of extinction, but also to prevent others from becoming threatened. We invite all New Zealanders to be a part of that effort.

## Vision

This Threatened Species Strategy aims to safeguard our vulnerable threatened species. It establishes some clear goals for increasing the number of threatened species we are working on, and prioritises some threatened and at risk species<sup>1</sup> for intensive management to set them on a path to recovery by 2025.

The growth of existing national initiatives including Predator Free 2050, Battle for our Birds and War on Weeds are at the heart of achieving this vision. Support and contributions through partnerships with local and regional councils, philanthropists, communities, landowners, researchers and others will be essential. Everyone has a responsibility and a role to play in protecting our species.

This Strategy is underpinned by an ethic of partnership between government agencies and Māori. Iwi are the indigenous kaitiaki or guardians of the natural world (Te Ao Tūroa), including the plants, animals and fungi of New Zealand. The recovery of our treasured species provides our Treaty partners with an opportunity to fulfil that role.

## Focus

**This Strategy is based on five themes necessary to significantly progress threatened species conservation:**

- ▶ Uniting against invaders on a landscape scale
- ▶ Managing ecosystems at scale to protect species
- ▶ Building our science and knowledge base
- ▶ Focusing beyond public conservation land
- ▶ Working together in partnerships.

<sup>1</sup> Species categorised as 'Threatened' (Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered or Nationally Vulnerable) or 'At Risk' (Declining, Recovering, Relict or Naturally Uncommon) under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

## Goals

To achieve the vision and assess our progress we will:

- 1 Manage 500 species for protection by 2025 – a 40% increase on today – and 600 species for protection by 2030.



- 2 Enhance the populations of 150 prioritised threatened and at risk species by 2025.



- 3 Integrate Te Ao Māori (the Māori world view) and mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) into species recovery programmes by 2025.



- 4 Support research, particularly through the National Science Challenges, that helps us to better understand data deficient species.







# A LAND APART

Much of New Zealand's flora and fauna is found nowhere else on Earth. Our flora and fauna is ancient and unique – we have flightless birds, frogs without tadpoles, bats that crawl on the ground, penguins that live in forests and trees from the age of dinosaurs. We also have giant invertebrates and fish that can live out of water.

# Our unique New Zealand

About 80% of our invertebrates, 70% of our birds, 84% of our freshwater fish, and 80% of our trees, ferns and flowering plants are ours alone.

This biodiversity – the living things that make up our natural ecosystems – defines New Zealand, and adds immeasurable value to our culture, our identity and our wild places. It is part of who we are and nourishes our collective well-being. In addition to having intrinsic value, our natural ecosystems provide us with services that support not only our lives, but also our society and economy.

We hold in trust the unique and wonderful flora and fauna of Aotearoa for future generations of New Zealanders and, indeed, the rest of the world. The survival of our wildlife is a responsibility we all share.

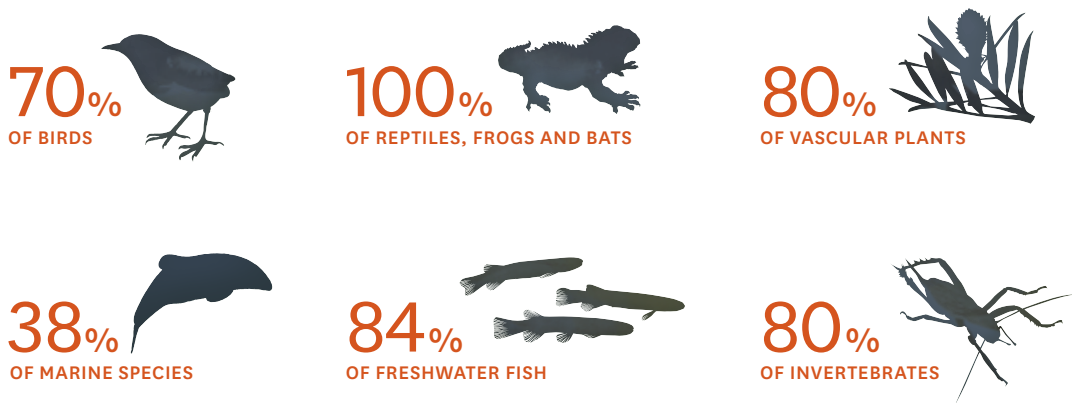
## The heartbeat of Te Ao Māori

New Zealand's indigenous plants and animals are an integral part of Māori culture; they are taonga, that is entities that are treasured or special. When plentiful, the plants and animals were vital sources of food that sustained not only the people, but their culture and world (Te Ao Māori<sup>2</sup>). Taonga, such as woven ceremonial korowai, carvings in whare and tools, were all crafted from the resources available in the natural environment. From an iwi perspective, these taonga all have stories to tell about the histories and whakapapa or genealogy of the people. All taonga have a mauri (life force), a wairua (spirit or soul), a tapu (sacredness) and mana (prestige). It follows, then, that the endurance, the sustenance and the heartbeat of Māoritanga is bound to the survival of those taonga – the plants and animals.

---

### PROPORTION OF NEW ZEALAND SPECIES FOUND NOWHERE ELSE ON THE EARTH

---



<sup>2</sup> Te Ao Māori means the Māori world.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Coming together for kiwi

KIWI HAVE VANISHED from much of New Zealand and we continue to lose around 2% of our national population each year. To stem that loss and turn this trend around, we need to keep kiwi safe from dogs, stoats and ferrets. DOC's Kiwi Recovery Plan aims to boost numbers nationally across all five species to 100,000 by 2030 – a big challenge that will only be met through the power of partnerships.

New Zealanders have already rallied to the cause. For more than two decades, research agencies, communities, iwi, businesses and the Government have worked together to improve the odds of our national icon. The partnership between DOC and Kiwis for kiwi (which represents the non-government kiwi sector) is an example of one of New Zealand's longest-standing and most successful conservation partnerships.

The positive results of this work include the North Island brown kiwi being removed from the threatened species list. This species was formerly listed as Nationally Vulnerable, but this year was downgraded to Declining/At Risk because of significant efforts that have increased populations in Coromandel and stopped the declines in Northland. This is an important milestone and with continued effort, it is hoped that the other kiwi species will also reach the point where they can be removed from the threatened species list.

Save Our Iconic Kiwi, a new government funding package established in 2015, aims to ensure that the collaborative work that is needed to save our national bird continues, to ensure that we achieve a 2% increase in both the national population and within each of the five individual kiwi species (North Island brown, little spotted, great spotted, rowi, and tokoeka). It will support both Treaty partners and communities through Kiwis for kiwi, and will extend DOC's current kiwi management programmes in the wild. The majority of kiwi are currently unmanaged and it is only through increased protection of these wild populations that we will be able to turn the current decline into an increase.

This new government funding coupled with the growth of iwi- and community-led projects (for example Kiwi Coast, Project Kiwi, Omataroa Kiwi Project) and other major initiatives, such as Predator Free 2050, the Taranaki Mouna Project and Battle for our Birds, all play a major role in bringing kiwi from endangered to everywhere.

# Trouble in paradise

Everything is connected. Every organism, be it an animal, plant or fungus, a great whale or a tiny fly, can be thought of as a single thread in nature's rich fabric. Woven together, the multitude and variety of threads creates dazzling and complex patterns that bring resilience and beauty to our natural world. The more threads there are, the more securely they are bound to one another, the stronger the fabric, and the better it can withstand the pressures and extremes of modern times.

So, when a beetle, an orchid or a bird disappears forever, it matters. Like so many island nations, our country has an unenviable record of extinction. In the 750 years since human arrival, at least 76 bird species have become extinct. In addition, three frogs, at least three lizards, one freshwater fish, four plants and an unknown number of invertebrate species have vanished. The mauri of our natural world has been diminished.

Some species were impacted by people and a great many more by the animals they brought here – rats, stoats, possums, pigs, cats and dogs – all of which found our taonga easy prey. Our creatures had not evolved in the presence of such predators and so had no defence – and they still don't, so that even today, populations of native animals continue to fall prey to the impacts of these predators.

Meanwhile, other introduced herbivores such as rabbits, deer, goats, possums and chamois put heavy pressure on our native plants. Their selective browsing can alter which species are found in our forests, tussocklands, wetlands and dunes, and the functioning of our ecosystems.

Garden escapees and other introduced weeds have also impacted on our native species. They smother tree canopies and can form dense ground-covering

mats that stifle native seedlings. Many weeds have adapted to invade special open habitats, such as braided rivers, drylands and dunes, where they quickly overwhelm native vegetation. Some weed species are ecosystem transformers and, over time, will change the composition of plants and animals.

Many of our plants and animals need broad tracts of continuous and connected habitat, but as we have developed our land, habitats have become too small for many of these species.

Pollution harms marine and freshwater species. For example, seabirds and marine mammals can become entangled in drifting nets and other marine rubbish, and the ingestion of plastic rubbish is causing increased numbers of deaths among marine vertebrates.

Freshwater fish, birds and invertebrates are affected by changes in water flow (for example the removal of water or establishment of dams), and the water quality of rivers, lakes and streams. Introduced aquatic weeds such as oxygen weed have huge impacts on freshwater biodiversity, and introduced browsers and predators completely alter freshwater ecosystems.

People place further pressure on our indigenous plants, animals and fungi through fishing bycatch, the release of illegal game animals, wildlife smuggling and biosecurity breaches, as well as climate change.

Some threats are being addressed on a local scale, but they are expensive and challenging to tackle across whole landscapes. Many native plants and animals are protected under the law, but legislation has a limited ability to manage climate change, pollution and pests.

---

## PRESSURES ON SPECIES COME FROM A BROAD RANGE OF THREATS

---



**INTRODUCED  
PREDATORS**



**HERBIVORES**



**WEEDS**



**LAND USE**



**ILLEGAL  
ACTIVITIES**



**INDUSTRIALISATION**



## SPOTLIGHT

### Beating wilding conifers

WILDING CONFERS are the windblown strays of larch, Douglas fir, and lodgepole and other pine species that have jumped their original plantations. Observers noted as far back as the late 1800s that wildings were already on the march across New Zealand.

Defying efforts to contain them, wilding conifers have since spread across conservation land and farmland at a rate of 5–6% a year, so that they now smother some 1.8 million hectares. Within another two decades, they're tipped to cover some 20% of the country.

In 2016, the Government allocated an additional \$16 m to wilding conifer control; in the first year, \$5 m will go to containing light infestations over a million hectares – a pre-emptive strike to spare much greater expense later.

Some wilding species, such as lodgepole pine or *Pinus contorta*, can grow at high altitudes, well beyond the native treeline, where, left unchecked, they will eventually replace much of our subalpine and alpine vegetation, home to many threatened species.

Wilding conifers have already spread across a range of habitats, such as inland dunes, glacial outwashes, ultramafic seams, geothermal areas, cliffs, ephemeral wetlands, braided riverbeds and frost flats.

Because of their immense thirst, they deprive sensitive catchments of badly-needed water. When wildings displace tussocks, they can reduce water availability by more than 40%.

Stemming their spread is essential if we're to halt biodiversity decline and maintain populations of threatened species.

## SPOTLIGHT

### War on Weeds – the Dirty Dozen

THE 'DIRTY DOZEN' are some of New Zealand's worst environmental weeds, which either seriously impact the habitats of our native species now, or they will in the future if they are left unchecked.

They threaten our native species directly and by changing their habitats. The direct threats are usually competition (such as for space, water, nutrients and light), and sometimes through the hybridisation of weeds with native threatened plants. Weeds can change the habitat of threatened species through a range of processes, such as soil chemistry (for example nitrogen fixers), habitat stabilisation (such as dunelands) and through fire risk. It has been estimated that weeds pose a threat to a third of our threatened plant species.

A key aim of the campaign is to raise awareness about the impacts of weeds and encourage people to learn to recognise the Dirty Dozen, limit the spread of weeds when travelling, control weeds on their own property and assist local conservation groups that tackle weed issues.

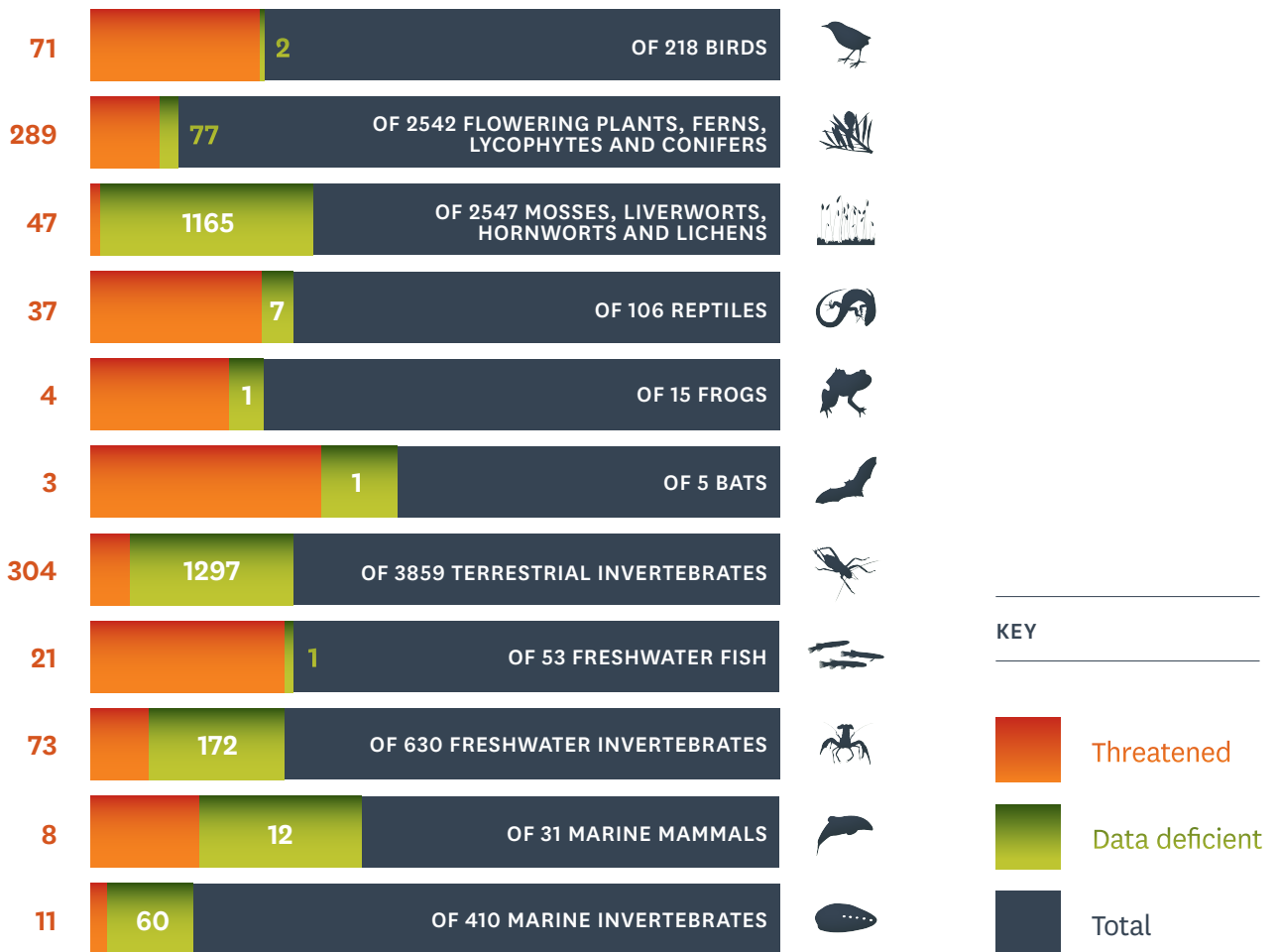
Spartina is a cordgrass that clogs up estuaries and harbours throughout the country. It grows densely and accumulates sediment over extensive areas, taking over habitats like saltmarsh and eelgrass, and reducing the habitat for species such as wading birds and flatfish. Spartina is under active control in most parts of the country, and has been eradicated from many sites.

# The state of our species

Presently, more than 3000 of our native species are classified as ‘threatened’ or ‘at risk’. Around 800 of these are classified as threatened and face the risk of extinction, while the remaining at risk species could see their populations decline through some slight change in conditions. The number of at risk species is expected to rise as more information comes to hand and the status of some groups is reassessed.

Knowledge gaps are a significant challenge – we simply do not know enough about some threatened species to assess their risk of extinction. Of the species assessed (about 13,000), approximately 3000 cannot be given a conservation status due to a lack of information about their population size or trend. As our knowledge improves, some of those species will be reclassified as at risk or threatened. There are also at least 300 threatened species that we cannot currently manage simply because we do not know enough about them to decide the appropriate course of action.

NUMBER OF THREATENED SPECIES BY BROAD TAXONOMIC GROUP



## Defining the risk

Threatened species face imminent extinction (or a reduction to just a few small, safe refuges) because of their small total population size and/or rapid rate of population decline. There are three threatened categories:

<b>Nationally Critical</b>	Most severely threatened; facing an immediate risk of extinction because of their small population and high susceptibility to chance events.
<b>Nationally Endangered</b>	Facing a high risk of extinction in the short term.
<b>Nationally Vulnerable</b>	Facing a risk of extinction in the medium term.

## What do we mean by 'species'?

In order to make sense of the bewildering variety of nature, science has sorted all living things into groups, from the broadest – plants, animals, fungi – down to the fundamental unit of species. In theory, a species is any organism that can breed with others of its kind and produce fertile offspring. In the more fluid reality of the natural world, exceptions can and do happen, but the species serves as a convenient base level of taxonomic organisation. However, finer distinctions below species also exist – subspecies, varieties and forms – which vary subtly, often according to geographical separation and their genetic makeup (genotype). In this Strategy, we use the word 'species' to describe this collective grouping of species, subspecies, varieties and forms.

To protect our biodiversity, it is important to know whether a plant or animal is a distinct species, a subspecies or some more subtle, perhaps regional, genetic variant. Only then can we protect all the genetic wealth of a species. For instance, Māui dolphin is a subspecies of Hector's dolphin – the North Island population (Māui) has a different genotype from the South Island population (Hector's), making it important to preserve both populations.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Māui dolphin – in urgent need

THE NEW ZEALAND endemic Māui dolphin is one of the rarest marine dolphins in the world and is listed as Nationally Critical. Results for the latest abundance estimate (2015–16) indicate that there are approximately 63 individual Māui dolphins aged 1 year and over, with 95% confidence that the estimate is between 57 and 75.

This abundance estimate is higher than the previous estimate (2010–11) of 55 individual Māui dolphins aged 1 year and over, but the margins of error of both estimates overlap. Therefore, we are not able to state with certainty that there has been an increase in the dolphin population, although there is some evidence of stabilisation from 2010–11 to 2015–16. Almost two-thirds of the animals sampled over the 2 years of the survey were female.

Today, Māui dolphins are only found in waters between Maunganui Bluff in Northland and Whanganui, although you are most likely to spot one between Manukau Harbour and Port Waikato.

The greatest cause of Māui deaths is drowning in fishing nets, but they are also impacted by boat strikes, pollution and disease.

In 2008, DOC and the Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) produced a threat management plan to identify human threats to Māui dolphin and its close South Island relative Hector's dolphin. The plan resulted in measures to counter those threats, and to guide research and monitoring. New fishing restrictions were put in place to protect Māui dolphins, including the West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary. In 2012 and 2013, further measures to protect Maui dolphins were added that increased the controls on fishing.

The threat management plan will be reviewed in 2018 to include new information on the distribution, threats and options for future recovery for Māui dolphin.

# We're all part of the solution

Protecting our native flora and fauna benefits our health and well-being, our environment, and our connection with nature, and also replenishes the mauri of our land. Many of us cherish an affinity with our unique indigenous plants and animals.

New Zealand's biodiversity and wild places are a major element of our country's envied international brand. Tourism is New Zealand's highest export earner, with around 1.4 million international tourists visiting our country each year to experience our natural places and see our unique flora and fauna. That number is predicted to double by 2025, highlighting the economic importance of conserving New Zealand's biodiversity.

Conservation isn't only about protecting threatened species though – it is just as important to stop other, healthier populations from becoming threatened. It costs far less to safeguard what we have than to rescue what we are close to losing.

New Zealand is a signatory to many international agreements. We have a duty of care, and our national and international commitments hold us to the promises we have made. The New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy Action Plan 2016 – 2020 outlines our contribution to achieving the international goals of the Convention on Biological Diversity's Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011 – 2020, and the associated Aichi Biodiversity Targets. The Action Plan sets ambitious national targets for greater protection and sustainable use of biodiversity. These targets will enable New Zealand to demonstrate progress toward the five strategic goals of the Convention on Biological Diversity's Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011 – 2020.

---

**The survival of our species is the responsibility of everyone.**

**Kei a tātou katoa te oranga  
o ngā tāonga koiora.**

---

We also have obligations to the International Union for Conservation of Nature to maintain our World Heritage Areas (such as Te Wāhipounamu – South West New Zealand). The Ramsar Convention (1971) requires us to conserve the biodiversity and sustainable use of our wetlands, while commitments to the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership oblige us to protect migratory waterbirds that overwinter in our country.



## SPOTLIGHT

## Working together – partnering with business

LIVING WATER is a 10-year partnership between DOC and Fonterra set up in 2013 to ensure that the dairy industry is part of our healthy natural world.

Farm development and pollution can have a major impact on native fish, like the longfin eel and giant kōkupu, through damage to their habitats and water quality.

The Living Water partnership intends to solve this problem by helping farmers to achieve the best possible environmental results both on their farms and across entire streams and rivers, or ‘water catchments’.

There are five projects underway, including one at the Waituna Creek in Southland, where Fonterra and DOC are working to create new habitat for eels and other native fish. Large-scale restoration is being carried out over approximately 5 km of stream, using a variety of methods for improving the freshwater habitat. For example, large woody debris will be placed along the stream edge to provide cover for eels and create deep pools. Other enhancements will include the construction of ‘edge of stream’ wetlands to reduce the amount of sediment and contaminants reaching the stream.

Projects like Waituna will test out new ideas and share lessons, helping not only the eels, but all of New Zealand’s freshwater plants and animals.







# A CALL TO ACTION

DOC is the principal government agency responsible for threatened species recovery. We work collaboratively with our partners, who are other central government agencies, iwi, other landowners, local government, philanthropic trusts such as the NEXT Foundation, research institutions and the wider public. Threatened species management is about what we can all do – this Strategy invites all New Zealanders to play their part.

# Foundations for recovery

**This Threatened Species Strategy builds on a platform of significant national conservation initiatives and supports the collective vision of a predator-free New Zealand by 2050.**

**Predator Free 2050** aims to rid New Zealand of those invasive pests that do the greatest harm to our native biodiversity, our economy and the primary sector – rats, stoats and possums. By way of support, the Government has granted \$28 million over 4 years and \$7 million per year thereafter, in addition to the \$70 million that it already spends on predator control each year. The Predator Free 2050 initiative expects to achieve a leverage of 3:1 – for every \$1 of taxpayer funding we will receive an additional \$3 of complementary funding. Predator Free 2050 will integrate, coordinate and expand existing control efforts over larger areas. Communities in Wellington, Picton, Dunedin, Nelson and Taranaki have already committed to becoming predator free by signing Memorandums of Understanding with DOC.

**National Science Challenges** are a set of major, long-term government investments, focused on issues of national importance that science can address. The New Zealand's Biological Heritage Challenge in particular will focus researchers on areas where we need step-change technology and information to be able to halt the decline of our native species. This challenge aims to reverse the decline of this country's biological heritage by protecting and managing native biodiversity, improving biosecurity, and enhancing resilience to harmful organisms.

**War on Weeds** is a Government initiative that aims to inspire New Zealanders to manage invasive plants. It encourages people to tackle weeds on their own properties and, more broadly, as part of community conservation efforts. The Dirty Dozen – a baker's dozen – are 13 common weeds threatening our native habitats that all New Zealanders can help to bring under control. The list is an annual roll call of garden escapees. DOC also supports community action with the DOC Community Fund supporting programmes such as the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust and Weedbusters NZ, and manages priority weeds

such as wilding pines, which currently cover more than 1.8 million hectares and continue to expand their range by 5 – 6% per year.

**Battle for our Birds** is a landscape-scale response to the periodic high levels of seed production (mast seeding) in our forests – particularly beech. The increased food resources provided by mast seeding provide rats with unusually favourable breeding conditions, driving increases in their populations. Stoats then respond to these increased rat populations by producing more litters.

The explosion in rat and stoat numbers results in a massive increase in predation on our birds, bats and invertebrates, including giant snails. Battle for our Birds blunts those irruptions by using aerial 1080 and trapping. In 2016, the Government allocated \$20.7 million of new funding to pest control over 800,000 hectares of habitat to protect kiwi, kākā, kea, whio, mohua/yellowhead, kākāriki/orange-fronted parakeet, pīwauwau/rock wren, pekapeka/bats and giant snails.

**Save Our Iconic Kiwi** is a government funding package that is dedicated to increasing the size of populations of our national symbol by supporting existing community efforts, fostering new efforts and carrying out large-scale pest control operations. Some of our most vulnerable kiwi species, such as the Fiordland tokoeka and great-spotted kiwi, are declining by about 2% each year. In 2015, Save Our Iconic Kiwi released a funding package of \$11.25 million over 4 years followed by \$6.8 million each year thereafter. This programme aims to reverse the fortunes of all kiwi species by boosting them by at least 2% per year. It will also fund more DOC-led protection and monitoring programmes for kiwi.

**Freshwater reforms** to improve water management will help halt the decline in our native fish species, which is linked to a decline in habitat and water quality. The National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014 directs councils to set objectives to safeguard the life-supporting capacity and indigenous species of fresh water.

## SPOTLIGHT

## 1080 – a vital tool

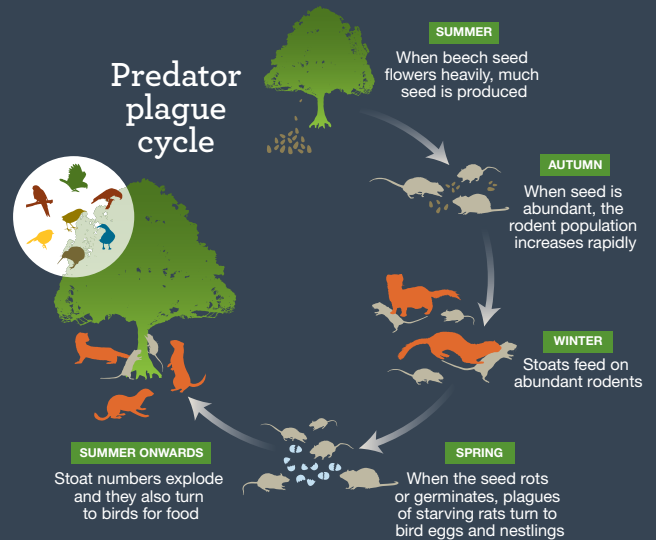
POTASSIUM FLUOROACETATE is a natural defence compound found in plants that provides protection from the impact of mammals. 1080, which is used in New Zealand to control pests, contains a synthesised form of this plant compound that is based on a salt ion, rather than potassium, and so is called sodium fluoroacetate. Sodium is used in 1080 because the salt makes the baits highly soluble, which means they will quickly dilute in rain, streams or groundwater. Dilution is by far the fastest and most common way in which 1080 biodegrades in the environment, but it can also be metabolised – on land and in water – by micro-organisms such as bacteria and by some aquatic plants.

1080 allows a rapid, landscape-scale response to the spikes in the numbers of predators that occur in response to the mast seeding of forest trees – which are becoming more frequent. Large-scale pest control operations (Battle for our Birds) are conducted to protect our native species during these mast events. Monitoring before, during and after these operations has shown that native birds enjoy improved breeding success and survival in 1080-treated areas.

1080 is also a critical component of Predator Free 2050, delivering an all-important initial knockdown before ground control can take over. In addition, modern aerial application by helicopters, guided by GPS tracking technology, means that pests can be precisely targeted across more difficult, remote terrain that cannot be trapped.

In recent decades, there has been a shift toward much thinner sowing rates. While fixed-wing operations in the 1970s distributed 1080 carrot baits at up to 25 kg/ha, it is now much more common to apply cereal baits at between 1.5 and 3 kg/ha. This has greatly reduced the accidental bykill of non-target species. Trials with different application patterns, such as strip sowing, have also allowed target kill rates to be achieved at reduced costs.

Just 0.15% of a typical bait is actually 1080 – the rest is a matrix of various grains and additives that make it more attractive to pests. New Zealand is the world's largest user of 1080 because of our unique ecology. 1080 is most potent against mammals, which makes it the toxin of choice here because all our terrestrial mammals except two native bat species are introduced pests. 1080 is of limited use in other countries because there are native mammals that they cannot risk harming.



## Battle for our Birds – protective cover for mohua/yellowhead



**THE NATIONALLY VULNERABLE** mohua is endemic to the South Island and now mostly lives in tall native beech forests in the southern half of the South Island. There

are currently fewer than 5000 mohua remaining in about 30 populations across their South Island distribution.

Mohua are highly sensitive to predation while nesting because they nest in holes in trees from which they can't escape from rats and stoats, and because the females undertake all the nesting duties. During mast years when rats and stoats are especially abundant, most mohua nesting attempts fail and many female birds are killed on the nest.

Predator control using trapping for stoats and aerially applied 1080 for rats, stoats and possums can reverse these declines. Nesting success of mohua during a rat and stoat plague in the Dart Valley in 2014, which was treated with aerial 1080, was 89% of 13 monitored nests. As part of the Battle for our Birds programme more than 50,000 ha of key mohua habitat are repeatedly treated with 1080 and trapping. In the Landsborough Valley, which has been trapped and repeatedly treated with aerially applied 1080, mohua have increased from a count of 14 to 300 along monitoring lines, a more than 20-fold increase since predator control began.

# The right tools for the job

## Recovery planning

DOC and its partners rely heavily on robust technical and strategic advice, clear priorities, and plans for recovery action. Some of that advice comes from a network of species recovery groups that help DOC managers and conservation partners to make informed decisions based on evidence and expert knowledge. Those groups are responsible for developing recovery plans for particular species or, where detailed plans are unnecessary, more generic management plans called prescriptions.

Formerly, these recovery groups supported only a small proportion of threatened species, but DOC is now developing a new network of groups known as 'Natural Heritage Specialist Groups', which have a broader mandate to advise on the recovery of all threatened species and their ecosystems.



## Prioritisation of species recovery

DOC's natural heritage prioritisation tools use a science-based approach to optimise the selection of sites for management. These tools maximise the number of species secured from extinction while ensuring that a representative range of New Zealand's ecosystems are healthy and functioning. This approach takes into account the conservation status and uniqueness of species, the ecological condition and potential for improvement of ecosystem management sites, and the cost of management.

Use of these prioritisation tools ensures that resources are efficiently distributed so that as many unique and threatened species as possible benefit from management within their native ecosystems. For example, instead of managing multiple species across several different sites, the system can identify where those species could be more efficiently managed at the same site within a high-value native ecosystem that will also provide habitat for lesser-known species, such as many invertebrates and fungi.

## Captive management

Captive management supports and enhances wild populations of our threatened species. DOC and the Zoological and Aquarium Association have a Memorandum of Understanding to pursue threatened species conservation and advocacy, particularly through visitor engagement and quality animal welfare. The MOU affirms the commitment of both organisations to enhancing and strengthening outcomes for New Zealand's native fauna. Members of the Zoo and Aquarium Association, other captive-breeding facilities, and experts in captive management and reintroductions support threatened species recovery through captive breeding, and rearing and release programmes. Such programmes can help to maintain survivors of a species that can no longer persist in the wild or can be used to augment wild populations through the release of captive-bred individuals. Breeding and rearing rare species is a highly-specialised field, as are the facilities and expertise it requires.



## Fenced sanctuaries

In the past 20 years, advances in technology have allowed specially designed fences to be used to exclude mammalian pests from conservation areas, dramatically increasing the potential for managing populations of highly vulnerable threatened species on mainland New Zealand. Prior to this, species such as hihi/stitchbird and tīeke/saddleback could be maintained only on offshore islands free of mammalian pests. The development of fenced sanctuaries has allowed such species to be returned to parts of their former range and has made them more accessible for the New Zealand public to experience.

In 1999, Zealandia, in Karori, Wellington, became the world's first fenced urban ecosanctuary. Since then, many more fenced sanctuaries have been established, the largest of which is Maungatautari Ecological Island. Other sanctuaries include Tawharanui Regional Park north of Auckland, Dunedin's Orokonui Ecosanctuary and Kotuku Peninsula Sanctuary on Great Barrier Island/Aotea.

## A partnership with the Botanic Gardens Australia and New Zealand

DOC has entered into a formal partnership with the New Zealand members of Botanic Gardens Australia and New Zealand (BGANZ) to accelerate threatened plant conservation in New Zealand. The Memorandum of Understanding, to be signed at the Threatened Species Summit 2017, provides a framework for cooperation over a range of mutually important plant conservation matters.

The partnership will improve coordination, increase conservation capability, achieve more research and reduce costs by increasing the efficiency and effectiveness of plant conservation work nationally.

BGANZ members include the major botanic gardens in Auckland, Wellington, Christchurch and Dunedin as well as three public gardens that provide similar services: Pukekura Park (New Plymouth), Eastwoodhill Arboretum (Gisborne) and Hamilton Gardens. ▶

## SPOTLIGHT

### Key to the city

ALL OVER NEW ZEALAND, communities are already working towards a predator-free New Zealand by 2050. 'Halo' projects are building on existing conservation initiatives as they extend protection beyond sanctuary fences and enable expansion of threatened species populations to wider areas. These halos are being met with such enthusiasm and support that our capital city has signed up with an MOU to embed this in the city's future.

In Wellington, halo projects capitalise on the pest-free benefits of the Zealandia fenced ecosanctuary. The idea behind the city's halo is to extend protection for threatened species into Wellington's urban communities and out to adjacent reserves. Community groups are backed by the Wellington City Council, Greater Wellington Regional Council and DOC.

Just minutes from downtown Wellington, communities are securing reserves for kākā, pōpokotea/whitehead, and toutouwai/North Island robin. Residents of pest-free suburbs such as Khandallah and Wadestown protect corridors between reserves, and other groups focus on reserves to protect important habitat. Polhill Protectors, a group of runners, mountain bikers and nature lovers protect 70-ha Polhill Reserve, while Friends of Trelissick Park and Friends of Otari-Wilton Bush use a network of traps to keep those areas safe from rats and mustelids. Greater Wellington and Wellington City Council tackle possums.

Hundreds of Wellingtonians have helped secure reserves for kākā, which have expanded throughout the city and are now one of a few urban-dwelling populations known since the last century. Kākā are now settled members of the city's community. Wellington's pest control groups have given many species a safe haven right in the heart of our capital city.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Myrtle rust: an imminent threat to our native flora

AROUND THE WORLD, trees and shrubs in the myrtle family are under attack from a virulent disease, myrtle rust, which is rapidly approaching mainland New Zealand. Myrtle rust has had a devastating effect on myrtle species wherever it has encountered them and, to date, there is no effective remedy. New Zealand has 28 native species in six genera of the myrtle family, including popular trees such as pōhutukawa, northern rātā and southern rātā, as well as mānuka, kānuka, ramarama and swamp maire. Most of these native species and two of the genera are found nowhere else in the world.

Myrtle rust was detected on Raoul Island, the largest of the Kermadec Islands in early 2017, where it has already destroyed a patch of mature Kermadec pōhutukawa. If myrtle rust arrives on mainland New Zealand, there will be serious consequences for our native myrtle species. Currently the Ministry for Primary Industries, along with DOC, are leading the biosecurity and research programme to try and prevent myrtle rust from getting to mainland New Zealand.

If it does reach our shores, it is expected that most species would move into a threatened status in the space of a few years, so urgent work is required to secure propagating material of all species before the disease arrives. Seed banking will be an important focus of this work to ensure that enough seed is collected and stored to represent the genetic variation of all species. However, seed banking will not be a panacea. The seed of some species may not survive the drying and freezing necessary for long-term storage, and the viability in long-term storage of several other species is not known.

We all need to be vigilant. Report any sighting of myrtle rust to the MPI hotline on 0800 80 99 66 and do not attempt to touch or collect samples.

### Seed banking: investing in the future of our native flora

Seed banking is the long-term storage of seed —an insurance policy against any loss of plant species in the wild. An increasingly important tool, seed banks are a reservoir from which we can restore species should some catastrophic event wipe them out in their natural range. For now, the technique is in its infancy in New Zealand – the seeds of just 100 species are held at the New Zealand Indigenous Flora Seed Bank – but the emerging threat of myrtle rust this year is a reminder that the effort will need to pick up pace.

However, it's not known whether all threatened plants can be safeguarded this way as some seed may not be 'bankable', so research is an important focus of this work.

We need to know, too, how to propagate from seed all of the species we hold (many native plants have quite specific germination requirements that are not fully understood) and we need to better understand their ecological requirements to ensure they can be successfully restored to natural habitats.

### Biocontrols

We do not yet possess techniques or resources to control every pest. Some are simply too well established, so that there may not be sufficient resources to manage the pest everywhere. Wandering willie (*Tradescantia fluminensis*) and old man's beard (*Clematis vitalba*) are two examples where herbicides and manual removal can only do so much.

In such circumstances, biocontrols offer a welcome alternative. Predators, herbivores, parasites and diseases that regulate pest species in their native habitats are, after careful risk assessment, introduced to control pests, after extensive testing to ensure they target only that specific pest. Sometimes, biocontrol is multi-pronged, employing a number of different

biocontrol agents, each attacking a different aspect of the pest's biology. Three species are used, for instance, to control wandering willie.

Examples of successful biocontrol introductions include:

- ▶ The release of tradescantia biocontrol agents to protect bush fragments and riparian forest and threatened species such as *Pittosporum obcordatum*
- ▶ Buddleia leaf weevil to reduce riverbed infestations of buddleia (*Buddleja davidii*)
- ▶ White smut fungus to target mist flower
- ▶ Heather beetle to control heather, an invasive weed that affects iconic alpine vegetation and native reptiles in Tongariro National Park.

Biocontrols are a collaborative endeavour between industry, regional and unitary councils, DOC and government research companies, primarily Landcare Research Manaaki Whenua, but also Scion and AgResearch. The Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment funds government research companies under weed and pest control research contracts, with contributions from DOC and regional councils.

## Biosecurity: preventing the arrival of new pests

Predator Free 2050 is one response to some of the introduced predators already in New Zealand, but control is also about preventing new threats.

New Zealand has an open economy, built on trading with the world. As more goods arrive on our shores, and we attract more tourists, the range of possible threats rises: this year, brown marmorated stink bug has been discovered at the border on several occasions, a stark reminder that New Zealand is not beyond the reach of harmful invaders. ▶



## SPOTLIGHT

### Biocontrols – tackling wandering willie

WANDERING WILLIE or tradescantia is one of the 'Dirty Dozen' weeds targeted in the 'War on Weeds' campaign. Wandering willie forms a dense carpet on the ground, preventing native species from establishing. It also causes an unpleasant allergic reaction in dogs. Because it's brittle, breaking into a multitude of segments when pulled, tradescantia is very difficult to contain – each broken segment can sprout anew. It is now so widespread that large-scale manual or chemical control is no longer feasible.

So DOC is trialling instead new biocontrol agents. Three species of tradescantia beetle – specific only to the weed – have been released around New Zealand, and early results suggest they're already having a significant impact. Research into another biocontrol option, the yellow leaf spot fungus, is also under way.

DOC is a member of the National Biocontrol Collective (NBC), a group that funds research into the biocontrol of serious environmental weeds, including tradescantia.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Island hopping – new pastures for the Mercury Islands tussock wētā

THE THREATENED Mercury Islands tussock wētā was discovered in 1970. This large (up to 70 mm in body length), carnivorous insect was known only from mammalian-free Atiu or Middle Island in the Mercury Island Group, off the eastern Coromandel coast. In the past, this wētā probably lived on neighbouring islands, and possibly mainland New Zealand, but it was exterminated by rats and other introduced mammals. Because its entire population was small and confined to a single island, the species was considered extremely vulnerable to random incidents, such as an invasion by rats.

To safeguard the wētā, DOC decided to establish new populations on neighbouring, rat-free Red Mercury and Double Islands. However, there were not enough wētā on Middle Island to spare without putting the founder population at risk. Clearly, the wētā would have to be bred up to healthy numbers in captivity instead, which had the added benefit of increasing our understanding of wētā biology and captive breeding requirements. Eventually, 120 captive-bred wētā were released on Double and Red Mercury Islands and they soon flourished. Later, more captive-bred wētā were translocated to nearby Korapuki, Ohinau and Kawhiti or Stanley Islands, where the species is now well established. With thriving populations on five new islands, the Mercury Islands tussock wētā now faces a much brighter future.

Biosecurity 2025 outlines the Government's moves to future-proof New Zealand's biosecurity systems and capability, building partnerships and enrolling all New Zealanders in the biosecurity challenge. As such, the Biosecurity 2025 project is a vital part of this Threatened Species Strategy.

## Translocations

Moving species around – or translocation – has a long history as a tool for the conservation of threatened species in New Zealand. Translocations are commonly carried out to allow genes to mix or to protect populations from predation. Unexpected events or new pressures can suddenly threaten the survival of small or relict populations of threatened species. Such emergencies demand swift action and may require populations to be evacuated from the wild.

For example, in 1964, the remaining 36 tieke/ South Island saddleback were moved from their only location on Big South Cape Island to a safe site following invasion by rats. This marked the first time a translocation successfully rescued an endangered species from imminent extinction anywhere in the world. Responding to sudden, random or newly emerging threats will continue to be an important part of the conservation of threatened species.

Threatened species are also translocated to return them to locations and ecosystems from which they have been lost. This not only increases their range, but also often makes them more accessible for the New Zealand public to enjoy. For example, species such as kōkako and dactylanthus (wood rose) have been translocated to suitable parts of their former range following the implementation of effective pest control to protect them into the future. Occasionally, it is also appropriate to translocate threatened species to sites that are outside their natural range to safeguard them for the future.

Translocation is a highly technical tool for threatened species management. The appropriate

and successful use of this tool requires in-depth knowledge of the species' ecology and behaviour, and a thorough understanding of how the species should be managed in its new environment over the long term.

## Regulation

Appropriate legislation protects species and their habitats, and grants managers the necessary powers to mount recovery operations or act promptly against new threats.

Some species are protected by law, but that does not protect them from impacts such as habitat loss, pollution, disease or climate change. Marine and aquatic life, and all invertebrates, can be protected through the Wildlife Act 1953, and freshwater fish through the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983. However, plants receive no such direct legal protection – at present, they can only be safeguarded by formal protection of the land on which they grow.

Habitats can be secured through the creation of protected areas, covenants and kawenata, or, to a lesser extent, through Resource Management Act (1991) zoning. The Biosecurity Act 1993 and Wild Animal Control Act 1977 manage biosecurity threats, and fire legislation can also protect against catastrophic losses to runaway blazes.

Other threats, such as declining water quality or quantity, disruption from industry, or impacts from development or extraction, are largely managed through the Resource Management Act and fisheries regulations.

Presently, there are limited powers in the legislation to protect biodiversity on private land without the owner's agreement, which can be problematic if urgent action is needed.

Work is underway on a National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity by the stakeholder-led Biodiversity Collaborative Group. Marine protection legislation is a vital tool for protecting marine ecosystems, and plans for overhauling existing legislation are well under way.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Keeping seabirds safe

FISHING BYCATCH is a major cause of death in seabirds, particularly for albatrosses and petrels. Birds like the Salvin's albatross, a Nationally Critical species, are at risk from collisions with warp wires – steel ropes that drag fishing nets.

DOC's Conservation Services Programme encourages fishing practices that promote the recovery of threatened species. The fishing industry, scientists, environmental stakeholders and MPI are working together to better understand and find solutions to fishing impacts on seabirds.

One such example is the development of tori (bird-scaring) lines, which are deployed on trawlers to stop birds colliding with warps and are best suited to the operational requirements of New Zealand fishing vessels. The project also produces educational material for fishers, which has led to tori lines being more widely adopted – a welcome win for Salvin's albatross.





# THE PLAN OF ATTACK

The scale, urgency and complexity of biodiversity loss mean that DOC cannot address this alone. Many conservation partners are already supporting threatened species recovery and ultimate success will come from the continued engagement of all New Zealanders. More teamwork is needed if we are to recover the populations of those species that are at greatest risk.

# Setting goals

Setting clear goals for threatened species provides focus and a sense of urgency. Therefore, to create a platform for threatened species recovery, we will:

## 1 Manage 500 species for protection by 2025 – a 40% increase on today – and 600 species for protection by 2030.

- ▶ This goal reflects the work we can achieve through the landscape-based predator control that will be delivered through Predator Free 2050 and other initiatives such as War on Weeds. Protection is about ensuring the long-term survival of a species.



## 2 Enhance the populations of 150 prioritised threatened and at risk species by 2025.

- ▶ This goal focuses conservation effort on ensuring that the long-term health of 150 threatened and at risk species will be improved.



## 3 Integrate Te Ao Māori (the Māori world view) and mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) into species recovery programmes by 2025.

- ▶ This goal is about integrating the Māori world view into species recovery plans. Māori possess a wealth of knowledge that will help us to recover threatened species.



## 4 Support research, particularly through the National Science Challenges, that helps us to better understand data deficient species.

- ▶ This goal moves us towards filling the information gaps that are currently preventing us from effectively managing some threatened species. We would like to engage citizen science and researchers in this area.



## What do we mean by ‘protection’?

‘Protection’ means the long-term protection of species, including managing all threats to secure species from extinction and ensuring their populations are buffered from the impacts of loss of genetic diversity, and longer term environmental events such as climate change.

## What do we mean by ‘enhanced’?

‘Enhanced national population’ means that conservation management has successfully enabled the recovery and long-term sustainability of a species. This will result in an increase in the total number of individuals nationally, the geographic range of the species, or the viability of the population by addressing genetic problems such as limited gene flow or inbreeding.



### SPOTLIGHT

## An encore for kōkako

THE SUCCESSFUL RECOVERY of the North Island kōkako shows what can be achieved when New Zealand animals are given a chance to thrive in an environment without predators.

Kōkako are recognised for their haunting song – slow, mournful notes that echo through the forest. Known as the blue-wattled crow because of the distinctive flaps of skin on their cheeks, kōkako forage for food among the branches of the tawa and taraire forests they prefer to call home.

Vulnerable to possums and rats that prey on their nests, killing chicks and eating eggs, the North Island kōkako was reduced to only 400 pairs by 1999, making it among the most threatened species in New Zealand with a classification of Nationally Critical.

Through research, DOC realised that the only way to ensure the survival of the kōkako was through a determined predator control programme. When predators were removed or under sustained control, the birds were able to breed and flourish again. Today, there are an estimated 1600 pairs of kōkako at 22 pest-managed sites from Northland to Kapiti Island.

Ten original populations have recovered and an additional 12 have been newly re-established by translocation to offshore islands and managed mainland sites. The goal now is to increase that number to 3000 pairs by 2025, stepping up pest control through the Predator Free 2050 programme.



## SPOTLIGHT

## An unseen foe – kauri dieback

**KAURI ARE FOUND** only in New Zealand and are among the world's mightiest trees. They grow to more than 50 metres tall and their trunks can be up to 16 metres around. They are a symbol of Northland and considered a taonga species by many northern iwi.

Though not endangered, these forest giants are at risk from a disease called kauri dieback, which is caused by a microscopic fungus that scientists believe arrived in New Zealand in the 1950s but has only recently been discovered.

Kauri dieback lives in soil and attacks tree roots. It prevents kauri from taking up water and nutrients, and gradually starves them to death. Almost all infected trees die and so far no cure has been found.

The fungus is easily spread on muddy shoes, equipment, vehicles and animals. It has infected trees across the upper North Island and has the potential to wipe out one of our most precious species. At Waipoua, DOC is working with Te Roroa iwi on a number of kauri dieback initiatives, including the development of a tactical plan and pig control.

DOC, MPI, iwi and councils are working together to protect kauri. To stop the movement of contaminated soil, DOC is upgrading tracks through kauri forests and installing footwear cleaning stations. A public education programme is also under way. The extent of kauri forests is being mapped and hygiene procedures for earthworks near kauri are being put into regional and district council plans. The New Zealand Transport Agency is actively engaged in assessing how it can reduce the risk of spread of kauri dieback along the highway in Waipoua forest and treat the materials collected from the road and sumps.

Meanwhile, scientists are researching ways to track and treat kauri dieback. Trials that have injected infected trunks with the chemical phosphite have had some success in slowing the impact on infected trees. Methods for deactivating the disease in soil collected from people and machinery are being refined. LIDAR (light imaging, detection and ranging) and satellite technologies are being investigated to see if they can be used to find and track the disease.

# 150 priority species

Conservation is about making choices. A strategy that says we will focus on everything is not a strategy. To provide focus for action, we have identified a draft list of 150 species with the goal of enhancing the populations of these species.

A broad list that covers a full range of species sends a clear message that conservation needs to go beyond focusing on those species that are popular and appealing. On the other hand, conservation is also about delivering on what is important to people. Social science research into our attitudes to species protection gives us insights into the species we value. The list includes some species such as kōkako which, thanks to the hard work of recent years, is no longer categorised as threatened but rather as 'at risk – recovering'.

The purpose of the list is not to limit action to only those 150 species. Rather, it provides focus for what species work will be done to 'enhance' their populations. The goal of increasing the number of species that are actively protected to 500 picks up many additional species.

DOC will continue to monitor those threatened species that are not being actively managed and will react if there is a threat of extinction.

## How the list was made

To develop the list of 150 species, we first identified 50 species that are notable to New Zealanders and are currently receiving management. Following this initial list, 100 more were selected using scientific criteria to represent the diversity of species that DOC works on (plants, bats, beetles, etc). The selection of these species takes into account how threatened the species is, whether the species has close relations and whether the species is unique to New Zealand.



## SPOTLIGHT

### Cultivation in gardens secures kākābeak

KĀKĀBEAK is internationally recognised as one of New Zealand's seriously threatened distinctive plant genera. Known to Māori as ngutu kākā, by the time New Zealand was settled by Europeans, kākābeak was already a seriously threatened plant. Threats include animal and insect browse, habitat loss and lack of recruitment. Luckily cultivation has offered a way to secure kākābeak from extinction – indeed experts now believe there is more genetic variation in gardens than in the wild. Using cultivated plants and Kiwi ingenuity, kākābeak is being restored to the stream gorges of the East Cape region by fringing seed, loaded into shotgun pellets, into the canyon walls, while some 600 plants have been established on islands in the Hauraki Gulf. White kākābeak has also been returned to its traditional home with help from Scion, a Crown Research Institute.

# Strategic themes

This Strategy plots a course back to a rich, vibrant and secure future for our land, freshwater and marine species. The actions we need to take can be grouped under five broad themes, all of which are needed to significantly advance threatened species conservation.

## Uniting against invaders on a landscape scale

New Zealand has a well-deserved, global reputation for rescuing threatened species, nearly all of which owe their decline to the impacts of introduced predators and browsers. Over the years, collaborative research by science agencies has refined methods and technologies that can knock down populations of invasive species, and keep them down, so that threatened species – and their habitats – can recover.

To capitalise on that success, we need to manage invasive pests more effectively over larger areas. Doing this will protect more of our species and make their populations more resilient. Predator Free 2050, Battle for our Birds and War on Weeds are significant national initiatives that will bring massive benefits to our threatened species as their momentum builds and their implementation continues over broad tracts of habitat. While initiatives such as Predator Free 2050 target the most significant causes of decline to threatened species, we will also continue to work with our partners to improve methods of controlling other predators, such as feral cats, which continue to decimate New Zealand's native wildlife.

Collaboration with the private sector, such as the partnership between DOC and the pest control company Goodnature, has driven significant advances in kill-trap technology and efficiency. Goodnature's innovative carbon dioxide-powered self-resetting traps now provide a humane and non-toxic additional tool for ground-based possum, rat and stoat control. The traps for rats and stoats will reset up to 24 times and for possums will reset up to 12 times, reducing the amount of effort required to check the devices and making them really popular for community

groups and private landowners. The research and development partnership with ZIP (Zero Invasive Predators Ltd) is testing new technologies and strategies to allow predator eradication to occur at the very large landscape scale on the New Zealand mainland that is needed to meet our national Predator Free 2050 goal.

Progress is also being made through collaborative efforts between iwi, private businesses, philanthropists, scientists and the Government. The NEXT foundation, a philanthropic trust, supports the growing effort by helping to fund regional pest control programmes such as Project Janszoon, a public/private initiative to restore Abel Tasman National Park; and Project Taranaki Mouna, an ambitious effort to make Egmont National Park the first predator-free national park and a haven for native wildlife.

This Strategy recognises the importance of New Zealanders working together to reduce and ultimately remove the pervasive threat that invasive pests pose to our native species. It seeks to unite New Zealanders under a single vision against pests, be they browsers, predators, weeds, invertebrates or pathogens.

## Managing ecosystems at scale to protect species

To get the best gains for threatened species we need to integrate large-scale ecosystem predator control programmes with the location of threatened species. This Strategy will integrate species recovery with ecosystem conservation, thereby securing maximum benefits for both threatened species and the habitats that support them. Protecting whole ecosystems using landscape-scale management can protect many more species – on land, in freshwater and at sea – and prevents more species from becoming threatened. The outcome of this holistic approach is better ecological function and connection between ecosystems and species, and improved resilience against new and existing pressures. ►



## SPOTLIGHT

### ZIP Ltd – going large with ‘Remove and Protect’

IT IS GENERALLY ACCEPTED that rats, possums and stoats are the main causes of biodiversity loss in New Zealand. Together, they kill an estimated 25 million native birds and countless other species every year.

Although New Zealand is a recognised leader in island pest eradication, we still lack the tools to permanently rid large tracts of the mainland from these pests.

ZIP Ltd (Zero Invasive Predators) was established by DOC and the NEXT Foundation in 2015 as a pest control research and development start-up, with the express aim of addressing that lack of tools. ZIP is developing new tools and methods that will completely remove rats, possums and stoats from entire landscapes, and prevent them from getting back in.

Backed by other investors, notably the dairy industry, ZIP leverages an average \$6 for every \$1 invested by DOC. If successful, its ‘Remove and Protect’ operating model will create large tracts of predator-free habitat in which threatened species can once again thrive – a blueprint for action that will see surrounding habitats brought into an expanding ‘rolling front’ as we edge towards a predator-free 2050.

For now, ZIP is trialling ‘Remove and Protect’ at a 400-ha site at Bottle Rock Peninsula in Queen Charlotte Sound, where it is testing a virtual barrier of traps and prototype pest control technologies to defend the site from predators. As at April 2017, the virtual barrier was stopping 97% of possums and 96% of rats that attempted to invade Bottle Rock. ZIP is already looking for a larger site – between 4000 and 5000 ha – where it can start scaling up its research.

## SPOTLIGHT

## Sequencing the genomes of an entire species

THE KĀKĀPŌ is endemic to New Zealand, and the world's heaviest and only flightless parrot. Once common, it was driven to the brink of extinction by predation from introduced mammals and human hunting. The remaining birds were translocated to predator-free offshore islands, but by the inception of the Kakapo Recovery Programme in 1995 there were just 51 individuals left.

The population has since tripled to just over 150 birds, as the result of an intensive and innovative recovery programme which has its roots in the pioneering work of Richard Henry, the international figure in the live transfer of birds to island refuges. Led by Don Merton, Paul Jansen and Deidre Vercoe, and driven by the dedication of a team including instrumental figures such as Gary Aburn and Daryl Eason, the recovery efforts have saved the kākāpō from extinction. However, it is still listed as Nationally Critical, threatened by disease, low fertility, and the impacts of low genetic diversity.

Genetic management is central to kākāpō conservation, used to guide aspects such as translocations, artificial insemination and prioritisation of breeding management. After the kākāpō genome was sequenced in 2015, Dr Andrew Digby of the Kakapo Recovery Programme kick-started 'Kakapo125+', an ambitious project to sequence the genomes of every individual kākāpō – a world-first for any species. The individual genomic data are being made publicly available to international researchers, which will spark a wealth of research with the potential to transform kākāpō conservation.

The research will provide a full population pedigree, examine the genetic causes of the infertility and disease which hamper recovery efforts, and assess the impact of the loss of genetic diversity on the species. It will provide many more benefits to kākāpō conservation, and will further understanding of the evolution of this unique bird.

The Kakapo125+ project is an international collaboration between DOC, universities, and science funding and facilitation organisations. Funding for the project has been coordinated by the Genetic Rescue Foundation through a combination of crowd-funding, private donors and genome sponsorship. So far about \$80,000 has been raised from around the world, and 81 genomes have been sequenced. The goal is to sequence the genomes of the 125 kākāpō alive when the project began, plus some important individuals which died before that: 137 kākāpō in total. The remaining fundraising and sequencing should be complete by early 2018.



This Strategy promotes the use of spatial planning tools to identify and prioritise Ecological Management Units (EMUs) – sites that contain mosaics of related ecosystems and threatened species. Around 1000 national EMUs embrace the full range of ecosystem types found in New Zealand. The conservation management of priority units provides ‘umbrella protection’ to the broad composition, structure and function of the ecosystems within each EMU, and also benefits many of the species that live in them. This approach considers the conservation work of iwi, communities, businesses and others to avoid duplicating their contribution within a national context of ecosystem and species priorities.

A good example is Moehau. This 5000-hectare coastal forest at the tip of the Coromandel Peninsula is home to kauri, rimu, northern rātā, coastal pōhutukawa, and threatened species such as brown kiwi, kākā, long-finned eels, Moehau stag beetle, and Archey’s and Hochstetter’s frogs. Landscape-scale pest control at Moehau using compounds such as 1080 ensures that these species are protected and the ecosystem is kept in good working order, thanks to the functions and roles they carry out.

This Strategy promotes the implementation of this shift towards managing ecosystems using the prioritisation approach. This will help optimise the use of resources, prevent more species from becoming threatened, and provide for the recovery and protection of a larger number of species within healthy and functional ecosystems.

## Building our science and knowledge base

This Strategy will be backed by science and mātauranga Māori – Māori knowledge and understanding. Support structures, systems and specialist expertise will provide robust technical and strategic advice to support species recovery planning, and the knowledge gained will be shared across the public and private conservation sectors. ▶

## Science leading the way

New Zealand’s science initiatives lead threatened species recovery. The Conservation and Environment Science Roadmap (CESR) identifies Government research priorities, where new scientific knowledge is needed to support decision-making for conservation and environmental management over the next two decades.

The roadmap has six themes:

- ▶ Environmental monitoring and data management
- ▶ Mātauranga Māori
- ▶ Climate change
- ▶ Biosecurity
- ▶ Integrated ecosystems and processes
- ▶ Social and economic factors.

The roadmap promotes collaboration between government agencies working on overlapping priorities and aims to align with the National Science Challenges. The Challenges are designed to ensure New Zealand takes a strategic approach to science investment by targeting a series of goals which, if achieved, will have a major and enduring benefit for New Zealand. New research and greater collaboration will be the step change we need in threatened species conservation as we look to reverse the decline in our native species.

The New Zealand’s Biological Heritage National Science Challenge is central to implementation of the Threatened Species Strategy. Cabinet has agreed a funding envelope of up to \$207 million over ten years for the New Zealand’s Biological Heritage Challenge, with a mission to ‘Reverse the decline of New Zealand’s biological heritage, through a national partnership to deliver a step change in research innovation, globally leading technologies and community and sector action.’

The Challenge aims to enhance and restore New Zealand’s land-based and freshwater ecosystems by deepening our understanding of which species we have, and seeking science-based solutions to dealing with threats – pest animals and insects, weeds, pathogens and climate change.

The roadmap also recognises the importance of citizen science. Government-funded programmes like Curious Minds aim to help share the value of science and technology by working with communities, businesses and educators through new and existing initiatives. Curious Minds has allocated \$9m in funding in the 2016/17 year and some of the funded projects are directly related to threatened species management.

National  
**SCIENCE**  
Challenges



Before you can protect a species, you need to know some basic facts about it. What taxonomic group does it belong to? Is it a separate species or some variation of one? Why does it live where it does? What does it need to thrive? This is a common conundrum, particularly among freshwater fish, plants, fungi and lizards, and finding out the answers usually demands lengthy, meticulous research.

Many of our conservation success stories – kākāpō, tīeke, kōkako, tuatara – have resulted from decades of study and adaptive management before reaching a happy ending. But the challenge doesn't stop with the species itself – we also have to understand how its management might affect other species. Recovery plans must also try to anticipate incursions by new pests, or the impacts of disease, climate change and human pressures.

This Strategy recognises the complexity of obtaining robust evidence, and seeks to develop science and research-based approaches and solutions.

## Focusing beyond public conservation land

A high proportion of threatened and at risk species are found outside public conservation areas – indeed, some occur only on private land. These include species that inhabit lakes, many river margins, wetlands, coastal and marine environments, drylands, and often naturally rare ecosystems that are under-represented in public conservation areas.

Many of these species need conservation management to survive, and that requires the support and collaboration of landowners and managers. To fulfil this Strategy's vision, we will need to focus new effort towards those species that are found outside public conservation areas.

Ngā Whenua Rāhui supports Māori landowners to protect the mauri of a site or species. Sometimes expressed as life essence, the mauri is natural integrity of blocks of land, or survival of a species that holds high ecological and biodiversity value. Mātauranga Māori is centred around mauri. Ngā Whenua Rāhui provides protection for Māori landowners through the use of 25-year renewable kawenata (covenants). The funding programme exists to protect the natural integrity of Māori land and preserve matauranga Māori.

The Queen Elizabeth II National Trust (QEII) was established under the Queen Elizabeth the Second National Trust Act 1977 to aid conservation on private land. The purpose of the Act is “to encourage and promote, for the benefit of New Zealand, the provision, protection, preservation and enhancement of open space.” QEII helps private landowners permanently protect special natural and cultural features on their land with open space covenants, including habitat for threatened species. These covenants are an important conservation mechanism for ensuring the long-term persistence of populations of threatened species on private land.

By 2017, QEII has registered 4226 covenants totalling more than 180,000 ha, with covenant sizes ranging between 40 ha and 21,910 ha. Habitat has been protected for threatened species including kākī/black stilt and North Island brown kiwi, and habitat formed for threatened plants, invertebrates and birds such as the New Zealand falcon.

Once the Strategy has been implemented, DOC will continue to work with iwi, landowners and managers wherever threatened species are found, and will foster their efforts to protect them and the habitats they need. Where necessary, statutory processes will safeguard against the effects of development and extraction. ►

## SPOTLIGHT

## A new genesis for whio

WHIO ARE FOUND nowhere else in the world. As river specialists, they prefer clean, fast-flowing streams in the forested upper catchments of New Zealand rivers. Whio are highly sensitive to stoat predation, and monitoring has shown that up to 90% of nests fail, 60% of fledged young are killed and around 50% of adult females can be killed during the moult period (when they are flightless) in areas where these predators are not controlled.

Genesis Energy has sponsored the Whio Forever Programme since 2011. During the first 5 years, Whio Forever has enabled DOC to double the number of managed pairs to more than 560 along 14,000 km of North and South Island rivers that are protected by more than 5000 new stoat traps. Shared development of the online game Whio Bootcamp, where users navigate the challenges of life as a fledgling whio in order to 'make it' in the wild, spreads an important conservation message in an engaging, fun and unconventional way. The bulk of future Genesis Energy sponsorship will help DOC and volunteer community groups to maintain those trap networks. The Genesis Energy and DOC partnership is highly successful because the people involved share a passion for whio and their recovery.





## SPOTLIGHT

## Return from exile – the New Zealand sea lion

NEW ZEALAND SEA LIONS are classified as Nationally Critical and are one of the rarest sea lion species in the world. The best estimate of the New Zealand sea lion population is 11,800, almost all inhabiting New Zealand's subantarctic Auckland and Campbell Islands. Recently, they have returned to the mainland on beaches in Otago, Southland and Stewart Island/Rakiura. The Stewart Island population is recognised as the first breeding colony on the mainland since sealing ended.

New Zealand sea lions face a raft of threats. Disease, competition with and accidental bycatch in commercial fishing operations, climate-induced changes in food availability, pup deaths from falling into natural mud holes, and disturbance from dogs and humans are all hampering their recovery.

Every year sea lions drown due to incidental entanglement in commercial fisheries. Concern over this contributed to the establishment of the Auckland Islands Marine Mammal Sanctuary and Marine Reserve. Fishing is now prohibited within 12 miles of the islands. In addition, all vessels fishing for squid deploy Sea Lion Exclusion Devices to minimise the risks of sea lions drowning in fishing gear, and government observers witness at least 50% of squid fishing effort around the Auckland Islands. The Minister for Primary Industries sets an annual fishing-related mortality limit, which would result in the closure of the fishery if reached. Effort, estimated and observed sea lion mortalities are reported to government and stakeholders on a weekly basis.

Limits on the numbers of sea lions that can be taken in nets each year is set by the Minister of Fisheries each year. Recognising the complex nature of threats facing sea lions, DOC and the Ministry for Primary Industries have worked to develop the New Zealand Sea Lion Threat Management Plan, due for release in 2017. The plan provides a work programme aimed at sustaining and eventually increasing the sea lion population within 20 years. A preliminary report indicated an increase in pup production at the Auckland Islands of about 14% over last year (1965 pups for 2016–17; 1727 pups for 2015–16). The plan recognises that there is no single threat that is impacting the sea lion population, and recovery will require mitigating multiple threats at the range of breeding sites.

Under current legislation, many threatened species have no legal protection on private land. The stakeholder-led Biodiversity Collaborative Group, which is comprised of industry, environmental NGOs and iwi, along with government agencies, is leading the development of a National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity. This will set out national objectives and policies for biodiversity protection under the Resource Management Act 1991. The Biodiversity Collaborative Group is also developing recommendations to enable and guide more conservation efforts on private and public lands.

## Working together in partnerships

We all benefit from our natural environment and have a role to play in its protection and enhancement. Some great work is being done by private landowners, including farmers, to protect the biodiversity they have on their properties. More of this great work is needed.

To make the substantial advances that are necessary to recover our threatened species and prevent extinctions, we need to work together. Government agencies cannot achieve this on their own. We need to find new ways to engage people and rekindle their concern. We need to empower iwi to regain their role as kaitiaki. We need to mobilise funding and in-kind support, promote partnerships, and encourage cooperation across existing conservation programmes. This Strategy will take the first, critical step by informing us about the state of our species, the priorities for action and how they can help.

The New Zealand Government will continue to provide leadership for the conservation of our natural environment, including our species, to ensure the effective national coordination of programmes, prevent duplication and avoid conflict between competing priorities. However, the support of iwi, local government, communities, researchers, the business sector and landowners is critical. Only by working together can we effectively prioritise and optimise the use of resources to protect our species.

By tapping into our love for our native wildlife, DOC will continue to foster and grow partnerships with iwi, local government, communities and private landowners. We will embrace the principles of kaitiakitanga and rangatiratanga to best protect those native species that are most at risk.

Consistent with the Conservation and Environment Science Roadmap, there are significant opportunities for New Zealand's research institutions to contribute to this goal. DOC's website will provide a list of species for which more information is required to determine their conservation status and inform their conservation management. Universities will be encouraged to find students to review relevant information and undertake research to fill these information gaps. DOC will work with other organisations, where possible, to support this work.

This Strategy acknowledges that sustainable development is a shared opportunity and responsibility. Success requires that we face the difficult and contentious challenges head on, rather than avoid them. It means being open, frank and honest about the impacts on our native species, and working together to find innovative ways to protect them.

# Top 10 actions

The following Top 10 actions are needed to achieve the threatened species goals:

1. **Achieve the Predator Free 2025 goals including:**
  - ▶ Continuing with Battle for our Birds – monitoring and taking appropriate action when a major mast event occurs
  - ▶ 1 million additional hectares of predator control
  - ▶ Eradicating predators from at least 20,000 hectares of mainland New Zealand without the use of fences
  - ▶ A predator-free status for all nature reserve islands
  - ▶ The ability to eradicate at least one mammal predator.
2. **Continue to invest in improving tools and technologies for predator control by:**
  - ▶ Focusing the science system through the Conservation and Environment Science Roadmap and the Biological Heritage Science Challenge.
  - ▶ Supporting innovation by the private sector through companies like Goodnature and R&D joint ventures such as ZIP Ltd.
  - ▶ Continuing to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of 1080 as a mission-critical tool for conservation.
3. **Identify a priority list of threatened and at risk plant species, and ensure that their seeds are held in a recognised seed storage facility by 2025.**
4. **Biosecurity 2025**
  - ▶ Strengthening New Zealand’s biosecurity system as outlined in the November 2016 Biosecurity 2025 Direction Statement.
5. **Progress key regulatory reforms:**
  - ▶ New marine protection legislation to provide more flexible tools for protecting marine ecosystems.
  - ▶ The continued development of a National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity by the stakeholder-led Biodiversity Collaborative Group.
6. **Implement freshwater reforms, particularly setting and implementing environmental limits; and continue support for freshwater habitat restoration.**
7. **Identify and publish threatened species ‘hotspots’ both on and off public conservation land to identify the key areas and threatened species for potential protection.**
8. **Select 500 of the data deficient species to focus researchers on further scientific work.**
9. **Ensure that national recovery planning systems and processes are fit for purpose, efficient and integrate mātauranga Māori.**
  - ▶ Incorporate Māori principles and knowledge
10. **Develop and implement a comprehensive monitoring regime that can be used by all those involved in species management that:**
  - ▶ Provides timely useful information on threatened species
  - ▶ Specifies a trigger for intervention to avoid extinction or increase the threat status of a species.

# WE CAN WIN THIS

Protecting and restoring our threatened species is a formidable and complex challenge. But the combined energy, knowledge and enthusiasm of iwi, communities, businesses and the Government provides a powerful opportunity to address that challenge. With strong science-based approaches and the momentum of national key initiatives such as Predator Free 2050, this Strategy will succeed.

Led by the Government in partnership with iwi, community, businesses and local government, we can bring our threatened species back from the brink of extinction. Now is the time for us to join forces, take action and play our part in protecting our species.



# 150 priority threatened and at risk species

For this Strategy, the Department of Conservation has selected 150 species currently managed for protection which will be enhanced. The species are selected to focus initial effort and to direct New Zealanders' attention towards threatened and at risk species conservation (see below).

The selected species are a first instalment that will be reviewed and updated as recovery progress is made and new information about the priority status of other species is obtained. These species are not the sole focus of the Strategy. Many more species in need of action will benefit from the other Strategy themes and focus areas.

## Notable species

### Birds



SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Apteryx australis</i> "Haast"	Haast brown kiwi, Haast tokoeka	Nationally Critical
<i>Apteryx rowi</i>	Ōkarito brown kiwi, rowi	Nationally Critical
<i>Diomedea antipodensis antipodensis</i>	Antipodean wandering albatross, toroa	Nationally Critical
<i>Himantopus novaezelandiae</i>	Black stilt, kakī	Nationally Critical
<i>Petroica traversi</i>	Black robin	Nationally Critical
<i>Porphyrio hochstetteri</i>	Takahē	Nationally Critical
<i>Pterodroma magentae</i>	Chatham Island tāiko	Nationally Critical
<i>Strigops habroptilus</i>	Kākāpō	Nationally Critical
<i>Apteryx australis lawryi</i>	Stewart Island brown kiwi, Stewart Island tokoeka	Nationally Endangered
<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>	Australasian bittern, matuku hūrepo	Nationally Endangered
<i>Fregatta maoriana</i>	New Zealand storm petrel	Nationally Endangered
<i>Nestor notabilis</i>	Kea	Nationally Endangered
<i>Xenicus gilviventris</i>	Rock wren, piwauwau	Nationally Endangered
<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>	Wrybill, ngutu-pare	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Apteryx australis australis</i>	Southern Fiordland brown kiwi, southern Fiordland tokoeka	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Apteryx haastii</i>	Great spotted kiwi, roa, roroa	Nationally Vulnerable

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Apteryx mantelli</i>	North Island brown kiwi	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</i>	Blue duck, whio	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Megadyptes antipodes</i>	Yellow-eyed penguin, hoiho	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Mohoua ochrocephala</i>	Yellowhead, mohua	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>	South Island kākā	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>	North Island kākā	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Notiomystis cincta</i>	Stitchbird, hihi	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Limosa lapponica baueri</i>	Eastern bar-tailed godwit, kuaka	At Risk – Declining
<i>Apteryx owenii</i>	Little spotted kiwi, kiwi pukupuku	At Risk – Recovering
<i>Callaeas wilsoni</i>	North Island kōkako	At Risk – Recovering
<i>Philesturnus carunculatus</i>	South Island saddleback, tīeke	At Risk – Recovering
<i>Philesturnus rufusater</i>	North Island saddleback, tīeke	At Risk – Recovering

### Plants



<i>Clianthus puniceus</i>	Kākābeak, ngutu kākā	Nationally Critical
<i>Metrosideros bartlettii</i>	Bartlett's rātā	Nationally Critical
<i>Pittosporum serpentinum</i>	Surville Cliffs pittosporum, kōhūhū tangihua	Nationally Critical
<i>Ranunculus paucifolius</i>	Castle Hill buttercup	Nationally Critical
<i>Myosotidium hortensia</i>	Chatham island forget-me-not	Nationally Vulnerable

### Marine mammals



<i>Balaenoptera edeni brydei</i>	Bryde's whale	Nationally Critical
<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori maui</i>	Māui dolphin	Nationally Critical
<i>Phocarcos hookeri</i>	New Zealand sea lion	Nationally Critical
<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori hectori</i>	Hector's dolphin	Nationally Endangered
<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>	Bottlenose dolphin	Nationally Endangered

### Marine fish



<i>Carcharodon carcharias</i>	Great white shark	At Risk – Declining
-------------------------------	-------------------	---------------------

### Marine invertebrate



<i>Paragorgia alisonae</i>	Bubblegum coral	Nationally Vulnerable
----------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

Freshwater  
fish

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>	Longfin eel	At Risk – Declining
<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>	Giant kōkopu	At Risk – Declining

## Bat



<i>Chalinolobus tuberculatus</i>	Long-tailed bat	Nationally Vulnerable
----------------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

## Reptiles



<i>Oligosoma otagense</i>	Otago skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Naultinus gemmeus</i>	Jewelled gecko	At Risk – Declining
<i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>	Tuatara	At Risk – Relict

## Frog



<i>Leiopelma archeyi</i>	Archey's frog	Nationally Vulnerable
--------------------------	---------------	-----------------------

## Invertebrates



<i>Brachaspis robustus</i>	Robust grasshopper	Nationally Endangered
<i>Powelliphanta superba prouseorum</i>	Large land snail	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Deinacrida mahoenui</i>	Mahoenui giant wētā	At Risk – Recovering

## 100 managed threatened and at risk species

## Birds



SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Anas nesiotis</i>	Campbell Island teal	Nationally Critical
<i>Charadrius obscurus obscurus</i>	Southern New Zealand dotterel, tūturiwhatu	Nationally Critical
<i>Haematopus chathamensis</i>	Chatham Island oystercatcher, tōrea tai	Nationally Critical
<i>Larus bulleri</i>	Black-billed gull, tarāpuka	Nationally Critical
<i>Leucocarbo onslowi</i>	Chatham Island shag	Nationally Critical
<i>Pelecanoides georgicus</i> “Codfish Island”	South Georgian diving petrel	Nationally Critical

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Sternula nereis davisae</i>	New Zealand fairy tern, tara iti	Nationally Critical
<i>Stictocarbo featherstoni</i>	Pitt Island shag	Nationally Critical
<i>Thinornis novaeseelandiae</i>	New Zealand shore plover, tuturuatu	Nationally Critical
<i>Chlidonias albostratus</i>	Black-fronted tern, tarapirohe	Nationally Endangered
<i>Hemiphaga chathamensis</i>	Chatham Island pigeon, parea	Nationally Vulnerable

## Plants



<i>Ackama nubicola</i>	Makamaka	Nationally Critical
<i>Atriplex hollowayi</i>	Holloway's crystalwort	Nationally Critical
<i>Brachyscome pinnata</i>	Daisy	Nationally Critical
<i>Carmichaelia carmichaeliae</i>	Pink broom	Nationally Critical
<i>Carmichaelia curta</i>	Waitaki broom	Nationally Critical
<i>Ceratocephala pungens</i>	Ranunculaceae (a buttercup)	Nationally Critical
<i>Chenopodium detestans</i>	New Zealand fish-guts plant	Nationally Critical
<i>Clianthus maximus</i>	Kākābeak, kōwhai ngutu-kākā	Nationally Critical
<i>Corybas carsei</i>	Swamp helmet orchid	Nationally Critical
<i>Craspedia</i> "Lake Heron"	Woollyhead	Nationally Critical
<i>Koeleria</i> aff. <i>novozelandica</i> "Awahokomo"	Subalpine grass	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium aegrum</i>	Banks Peninsula scurvy grass	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium banksii</i>	Coastal peppergrass	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium kirkii</i>	Salt-pan cress	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium oblitum</i>	Scurvy grass	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium panniforme</i>	Mangere Island scurvy grass	Nationally Critical
<i>Lepidium rekohuense</i>	Chatham Islands scurvy grass	Nationally Critical
<i>Myosotis colensoi</i>	Castle Hill forget-me-not	Nationally Critical
<i>Myosotis matthewsii</i>	Matthews's forget-me-not	Nationally Critical
<i>Myosotis pottsiana</i>	Potts's forget-me-not	Nationally Critical
<i>Olearia adenocarpa</i>	Tree daisy	Nationally Critical
<i>Pachycladon fasciarium</i>	Chalk cress	Nationally Critical
<i>Pennantia baylisiana</i>	Three Kings kaikōmako	Nationally Critical
<i>Pseudognaphalium ephemerum</i>	Kettlehole cudweed	Nationally Critical
<i>Scutellaria novae-zelandiae</i>	New Zealand skullcap, shovel mint	Nationally Critical
<i>Simplicia laxa</i>	Simplicia (a grass)	Nationally Critical

## Plants

continued



SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Tecomanthe speciosa</i>	Tecomanthe, akapuāea (a liane)	Nationally Critical
<i>Australopyrum calcis</i> subsp. <i>optatum</i>	Limestone wheatgrass	Nationally Endangered
<i>Lepidium oleraceum</i>	Cook's scurvy grass	Nationally Endangered
<i>Melicytus drucei</i>	Mt Egmont shrub mahoe	Nationally Endangered
<i>Myosurus minimus</i> subsp. <i>novaezelandiae</i>	New Zealand mousetail	Nationally Endangered
<i>Wurmbea novae-zelandiae</i>	Wurmbea (a lily)	Nationally Endangered
<i>Amphibromus fluitans</i>	Water brome	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Dactylanthus taylorii</i>	Woodrose, pua o Te Rēinga	Nationally Vulnerable

## Freshwater fish



<i>Galaxias</i> sp.	Clutha flathead galaxias	Nationally Critical
<i>Galaxias</i> "Teviot"	Teviot flathead galaxias (Teviot River)	Nationally Critical
<i>Galaxias</i> aff. <i>cobitinis</i> "Waitaki"	Lowland longjaw galaxias (Waitaki River)	Nationally Critical
<i>Neochanna burrowsius</i>	Canterbury mudfish	Nationally Critical
<i>Galaxias</i> "Nevis"	Nevis galaxias (Nevis River)	Nationally Endangered
<i>Galaxias</i> aff. <i>paucispondylus</i> "Manuherikia"	Alpine galaxias (Manuherikia River)	Nationally Endangered
<i>Galaxias anomalus</i>	Central Otago roundhead galaxias	Nationally Endangered
<i>Galaxias eldoni</i>	Eldon's galaxias	Nationally Endangered
<i>Galaxias pullus</i>	Dusky galaxias	Nationally Endangered
<i>Galaxias postvectis</i>	Shortjaw kōkopu	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Geotria australis</i>	Lamprey	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>	Torrentfish	At Risk – Declining

## Bat



<i>Mystacina tuberculata tuberculata</i>	Southern short-tailed bat	Nationally Endangered
--	---------------------------	-----------------------

## Reptiles



<i>Oligosoma</i> aff. <i>infrapunctatum</i> "Chesterfield"	Chesterfield skink	Nationally Critical
<i>Oligosoma</i> aff. <i>longipes</i> "Rangitata"	Rangitata skink	Nationally Critical
<i>Mokopirirakau</i> "Open Bay Islands"	Open Bay Islands gecko	Nationally Endangered

SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>Oligosoma burganae</i>	Burgan skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Oligosoma grande</i>	Grand skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Oligosoma judgei</i>	Barrier skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Oligosoma pikitanga</i>	Sinbad skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Oligosoma taumakae</i>	Open Bay Islands skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Oligosoma whittakeri</i>	Whittaker's skink	Nationally Endangered
<i>Toropuku stephensi</i>	Cook Strait striped gecko	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Hoplodactylus duvaucelii</i>	Duvaucel's gecko	At Risk – Relict

## Invertebrates



<i>Bembidion tillyardi</i>	Back Beach beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Cryptodacne rangiauria</i>	Fungus beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Cytora taipa</i>	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Delos</i> sp.	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Delouagapia tasmani</i>	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Fectola melchior</i>	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Geodorcus ithaginis</i>	Mokohinau stag beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Holcaspis brevicula</i>	Ground beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Kiwaia</i> sp. "Cloudy Bay"	Moth	Nationally Critical
<i>Powelliphanta augusta</i>	Large land snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Powelliphanta</i> "Buller River"	Large land snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Powelliphanta gilliesi brunnea</i>	Large land snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Powelliphanta patrickensis</i>	Large land snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Pseudhelops antipodensis</i>	Darkling beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Rhytida oconnori</i>	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Rhytida webbi</i>	Snail	Nationally Critical
<i>Stathmopoda campylocha</i>	Moth	Nationally Critical
<i>Tepakiphasma ngatikuri</i>	Stick insect	Nationally Critical
<i>Xylotoles costatus</i>	Pitt Island longhorn beetle	Nationally Critical
<i>Amborhytida</i> sp.	Snail	Nationally Endangered
<i>Costaliodiscus parrishi</i>	Snail	Nationally Endangered
<i>Placostylus bollonsi</i>	King Island turret snail	Nationally Endangered
<i>Succinea archeyi</i>	Snail	Nationally Endangered
<i>Wainuia clarki</i>	Snail	Nationally Endangered

Invertebrates  
continued



SCIENTIFIC NAME	COMMON NAME	CONSERVATION STATUS
<i>“Acroclita” discariana</i>	Moth	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Cephalissa siria</i>	Moth	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Geodorcus capito</i>	Stag beetle	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Gingidiobora nebulosa</i>	Moth	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Kupea electilis</i>	Moth	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Paryphanta wattii</i>	Kauri snail, pupurangi	Nationally Vulnerable
<i>Houdinia flexilissima</i>	Moth	At Risk – Relict

## Photographs

### COVER

Kōkako. Photo: © Neil Fitzgerald

### PAGE 2

Tuatara. Photo: Sabine Bernert

### PAGE 6

Whio/blue duck. Photo: Liz Carlson

### PAGE 9

Rangi Raki volunteering with Kiwis for kiwi in Te Teko, Bay of Plenty. Photo: Sabine Bernert

### PAGE 11

(left)

Wild ginger forms thickets choking native plants.

Photo: Weedbusters

(right)

Wilding conifer pest control.

Photo: Herb Christophers

### PAGE 13

Māui dolphin, the world's rarest subspecies of dolphin. Photo: Martin Stanley

### PAGE 14

Whangamarino Wetland, Waikato.

Photo: Mary Beech

### PAGE 15

Aerial view of Whangamarino Wetland. Photo: DOC

### INSET

Giant kōkupu. Photo: Andy Hicks

### PAGE 16

Takahē release in the Murchison Mountains.

Photo: Brent Beaven

### PAGE 19

Mohua/yellowhead. Photo: Sabine Bernert

### PAGE 20

Maungatautari excluder fence.

Photo: © Neil Fitzgerald

### PAGE 21

Kākā. Photo: Sabine Bernert

### PAGE 22

Myrtle leaves showing *Puccinia psidii* rust.

Photo: Forest and Kim Starr

### PAGE 23

Wandering willie (*Tradescantia fluminensis*) smothers native plants. Photo: Weedbusters

### PAGE 24

Mercury Island tusked wētā.

Photo: Chris Winks CCO 1.0

### PAGE 25

Albatross attracted to a trawl vessel hauling the catch. Photo: DOC

### PAGE 26

Aiden releasing a long-tailed bat.

Photo: © Neil Fitzgerald

### PAGE 29

Kōkako. Photo: © Neil Fitzgerald

### PAGE 30

Kauri (*Agathis australis*). Photo: Jack Mace

### INSET

The cleaning station at Tāne Mahuta.

Photo: Mike Williams of MWDDesign

### PAGE 31

Kākābeak (*Clianthus puniceus*).

Photo: Bernard Spragg

### PAGE 33

ZIP staffer Susannah Aitken baits a 'TUN200' prototype trap.

Photo: Robyn Janes (Media Fix)

### PAGE 34

Kākāpō. Photo: Sabine Bernert

### PAGE 37

(left)

Whio/blue duck. Photo: Sabine Bernert

(right)

DOC staff member working with Genesis Energy in the Mangatepopo.

Photo: Herb Christophers

### PAGE 38

New Zealand sea lion. Photo: © Neil Fitzgerald

### PAGE 41

Jewelled gecko. Photo: Sabine Bernert

Department of Conservation  
PO Box 10420, Wellington 6143  
New Zealand

May 2017

EDITING AND DESIGN:  
Publishing Team, Department of Conservation



This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the work, as long as you attribute the work to the Crown and abide by the other licence terms, except for photographs throughout the work, which are copyright as per the details on page 49. To view a copy of this licence, <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>.



## **New Zealand's Threatened Species Strategy: a brief assessment from a WRC perspective**

Prepared by Matthew Vare (Policy) & Alan Saunders (Natural Heritage). 6 June 2017

### **Overview**

The draft strategy outlines Government's plan to halt the decline in threatened species and restore them to healthy populations. The strategy is aspirational, though light on detail (it has no action plan) and is silent on resourcing.

Such a strategy is long overdue given ongoing and serious declines in native biodiversity. It is intended to provide an objective approach to assigning priorities for species which can then be integrated with the biodiversity programmes of others, especially regional councils (e.g. at sub-regional, catchment and even farm scale).

The strategy could build on the existing relationships and programmes undertaken between DOC and WRC and used to further develop and strengthen them to improve alignment and to ensure complementary activities achieve collective and maximum impact.

There is an opportunity to enhance this collective impact potential through consultation on the strategy. Submissions on the draft strategy close on 31 July 2017.

### **Structure**

The strategy identifies four goals:

1. Manage 500 species for protection by 2025 – a 40% increase on today – and 600 species for protection by 2030
2. Enhance the populations of 150 prioritised threatened and at risk species by 2025.
3. Integrate Te Ao Maori and Mataranga Maori into species recovery programmes by 2025.
4. Support research, particularly through the National Science Challenges, that help us better understand data deficient species.

It then lists five strategic themes:

1. Uniting against invaders on a landscape scale
2. Managing ecosystems at scale to protect species
3. Building our science and knowledge base
4. Focussing beyond public conservation land
5. Working together in partnerships

It is here that there is the greatest apparent overlap, and potential alignment, with WRC's roles and responsibilities in managing biodiversity - in terms of legislation (the RMA and Biosecurity Act), and in relation to our strategic direction (working together in partnerships).

The final part of the strategy lists ten key actions to deliver on the four goals. The links between the five strategic themes and the ten key actions, however, are not clear. The majority of actions seem to be simply headings, with some merely referencing delivery of other strategies (e.g. Biosecurity 2025), or programmes (eg. freshwater reforms). The actions are provided here as Appendix 1.

**Summary of suggested WRC responses to DOC**

1. It is encouraging to see this strategic initiative by DOC to improve the status of threatened species. The recent report on the state of our birds by the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment confirms an urgent need for a more effective approach to reversing ongoing biodiversity declines.
2. DOC has key roles in conserving biodiversity on public conservation lands. With the identification of goals and priorities it can be hoped that this strategy will lead to increased government funding so that DOC can make further progress towards these goals. The size and complexity of this task, however, means that it is unlikely to be effectively managed by one agency alone.
3. A summary in the strategy of the factors limiting DOC's ability to manage more species would provide a useful justification not only for additional central government funding, but would also allow regional councils, territorial authorities, philanthropists and others to identify how they might contribute. Such a summary would also allow community groups, landowners, iwi and others to appropriately focus their efforts to complement DOC programmes.
4. Regional councils have important responsibilities to conserve biodiversity on private lands. Because some threatened species occur partly or entirely on private land it is clear that regional councils will have an important part to play in their recovery. A strategic framework that facilitates inter-agency alignment will do much to enhance the effectiveness and efficiency of biodiversity conservation projects on both public and private land.
5. The number of community groups involved in conserving biodiversity at local sites is growing rapidly and is a feature of the New Zealand conservation scene today. These groups contribute significant collective capacity and underpin progress being made in many places. Supporting and co-ordinating these groups as they strive to achieve and sustain conservation outcomes, and as they tackle larger and more complex conservation projects, is a growing role for many regional councils and is becoming an integral part of the way WRC works.
6. It is encouraging that a partnership approach is promoted in the strategy through which it is anticipated that additional capacity from other organisations may be directed to augment DOC's efforts. There would be value in acknowledging and promoting the important roles that iwi, regional councils, community groups, landowners, philanthropists and others could play as partners in implementing this strategy.

## Appendix 1

# Top 10 actions

The following Top 10 actions are needed to achieve the threatened species goals:

1. **Achieve the Predator Free 2025 goals including:**
  - ▶ Continuing with Battle for our Birds – monitoring and taking appropriate action when a major mast event occurs
  - ▶ 1 million additional hectares of predator control
  - ▶ Eradicating predators from at least 20,000 hectares of mainland New Zealand without the use of fences
  - ▶ A predator-free status for all nature reserve islands
  - ▶ The ability to eradicate at least one mammal predator.
2. **Continue to invest in improving tools and technologies for predator control by:**
  - ▶ Focusing the science system through the Conservation and Environment Science Roadmap and the Biological Heritage Science Challenge.
  - ▶ Supporting innovation by the private sector through companies like Goodnature and R&D joint ventures such as ZIP Ltd.
  - ▶ Continuing to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of 1080 as a mission-critical tool for conservation.
3. **Identify a priority list of threatened and at risk plant species, and ensure that their seeds are held in a recognised seed storage facility by 2025.**
4. **Biosecurity 2025**
  - ▶ Strengthening New Zealand's biosecurity system as outlined in the November 2016 Biosecurity 2025 Direction Statement.
5. **Progress key regulatory reforms:**
  - ▶ New marine protection legislation to provide more flexible tools for protecting marine ecosystems.
  - ▶ The continued development of a National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity by the stakeholder-led Biodiversity Collaborative Group.
6. **Implement freshwater reforms, particularly setting and implementing environmental limits; and continue support for freshwater habitat restoration.**
7. **Identify and publish threatened species 'hotspots' both on and off public conservation land to identify the key areas and threatened species for potential protection.**
8. **Select 500 of the data deficient species to focus researchers on further scientific work.**
9. **Ensure that national recovery planning systems and processes are fit for purpose, efficient and integrate mātauranga Māori.**
  - ▶ Incorporate Māori principles and knowledge
10. **Develop and implement a comprehensive monitoring regime that can be used by all those involved in species management that:**
  - ▶ Provides timely useful information on threatened species
  - ▶ Specifies a trigger for intervention to avoid extinction or increase the threat status of a species.

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 03 04 08

**Date:** 12 June 2017

**To:** Chief Executive Officer

**From:** Director – Integrated Catchment Management Directorate

**Subject:** **Myrtle Rust Response – Ministry for Primary Industries**

**Section:** A (Committee has delegated authority to make decision)

---

## 1. Purpose

Provide the Committee with an update on the Myrtle Rust national biosecurity response being led by the Ministry for Primary Industries.

## 2. Recommendation

That the report 'Myrtle Rust Response – Ministry for Primary Industries' (Doc# 10614003 dated 12 June 2017) be received for information.

## 3. Summary

A verbal update on the Myrtle Rust national biosecurity response will be provided to the committee by Mark Bateman (Operations Manager for Myrtle Rust response - Ministry for Primary Industries). The update will cover an overview of the myrtle rust response including current situation and predicted response development.

---

*Patrick Whaley*  
Manager, Integrated Catchment Services

---

*Clare Crickett*  
Director, Integrated Catchment Management

# Report to Integrated Catchment Management Committee

## 22 June 2017 – To be received

**File No:** 03 04 08  
**Date:** 6 June 2017  
**To:** Chief Executive Officer  
**From:** Director, Integrated Catchment Management  
**Subject:** Flood events report March to April 2017  
**Section:** **A (Committee has delegated authority to make decision)**

---

### 1. Purpose

To provide the committee with an overview of the recent flood events, the impacts these have had within the zones and the responses and remediation needed.

### 2. Recommendation

That the report "Flood events report March to April 2017" (*Doc# 10554519 dated 6 June 2017*) be received for information.

### 3. Overview of flood events March to April 2017

The Waikato region has had an exceptionally wet autumn with record rainfalls and flows through March and April due to a series of weather events:

- A series of heavy rainfall bands occurred in the region with the two most significant occurring overnight on 7/8 March and 10/11 March, colloquially termed the 'Tasman Tempest'.
- Ex-Tropical Cyclone Debbie made landfall in New Zealand on 4 April. The non-frontal, low pressure system caused heavy rainfall across the Waikato region, however was relatively short-lived with heavy rainfall easing by the early hours of 6 April.
- Ex-Tropical Cyclone Cook and another Tasman Low combined to produce 3 and a half days of heavy rainfall from 11 to 14 April.

Over the month of April the majority of the region received significantly higher rainfall than historic levels. Compounding this, the month of March was also unusually wet for many areas (Table 1). The prolonged period of high rainfall resulted in highly saturated soils and challenging flood management conditions due to relatively high pre-existing river levels and decreased storage in flood protection scheme components.

Rainfall levels were up to 450% of the normal March average and 317% of April averages. All sites (except April for Kaimai summit) recorded greater than 100% of average rainfall for both March and April 2017.

**Table 1: Monthly averages for March and April compared to 2017 levels, with 100-200% in blue, 200-300% in orange, >300% in red and black is greatest % of monthly average.**

Catchment	Location	Start of monitoring	March 2017 rainfall (mm)	March Ave. (mm)	% of average	April 2017 rainfall (mm)	April Ave. (mm)	% of average
Awaroa	Hauturu Trig	Mar-07	120	111	108	372	208	179
Kaawa	Wairamarama	Jan-07	277.5	86	324	287	119	241
Kaihere	Maungakawa	Dec-92	244.5	87	280	259	97	265
Kauaeranga	Pinnacles	Mar-91	999	308	324	572	331	172
Mangaokewa	Te Kuiti EWS	Sep-83	154.5	78	198	271	100	271
Mangaokewa	Wharekiri	Jun-89	180	96	187	282	126	223
Mangaotaki	Waitanguru	Jun-89	158.5	134	119	410	181	226
Matawai	Hodder East Rd Castle Rock	Sep-90	525.5	174	302	477	201	238
Ohinemuri	Queens Head	Nov-89	419.5	122	344	291	148	196
Otupoto	Otaipuhi Climate Station	Oct-04	276.5	93	297	370	130	284
Piako	Maukoro Landing Rd	Oct-87	245	77	317	256	91	281
Piako	Appletree	Mar-11	333	148	225	265	124	214
Puniu	Bartons Corner Rd Br	Apr-03	219	61	357	276	103	267
Puniu	Ngaroma	Jun-82	231	137	169	380	155	244
Rapurapu	Kaimai Summit	Nov-92	500	486	103	167	211	79
Tamihana	Matamata Aerodrome	Feb-98	300	78	382	166	96	173
Waihou	Te Aroha	Jan-86	320	88	365	285	95	299
Waingaro	Ruakiwi Rd Off SH22	May-02	214	75	285	219	108	202
Waipa	Otewa	May-81	191	95	200	299	109	274
Waitekauri	Golden Cross	Oct-90	578.5	208	278	384	242	159
Waitetuna	Karamu Walkway	Jan-07	270	97	278	262	126	207
Whangamarino	Control Structure	Sep-03	364.5	81	450	249	78	317

Correlating the frequency of the events and flows to the collective impacts on highly saturated catchments is challenging, as it is difficult to capture cumulative effects in single measurements. Nevertheless, the frequency has been considered across a number of telemetered sites for various time periods in order to give an indication of overall maximum magnitude as shown in Table 2 below.

**Table 2: Maximum frequency river and rainfall levels during March and April 2017 within each Zone. Red shows frequencies less than 2% AEP, orange 2- 5% AEP, yellow 5-10% AEP and grey > 20% AEP.**

Zone			Lower Waikato	Waihou/ Piako	Coroman del	Central	Waipa	West Coast	Taupo/ Upper Waikato
March	River Level*	Max. AEP	20-10	2-1	<2	None greater than annual	None greater than annual	None greater than annual	None greater than annual
		Place	Mangatawhiri	Orere	Waiwawa				
		Flow cumecs	119.1	189.9	1075				
	Rain-fall	Max. AEP	2.5-2	5-3.3	2-1.7	10-5	50-20	None greater than annual	None greater than annual
		Time pd	12 hr	48 hr	6 hr	24 hr	24 hr		
		Place	Control Structure	Maungakawa	Pinnacles	Ruakura	Puniu		
		Rain (mm)	118.0	123.0	262.5	82.0	83.5		
April	River Level	Max. AEP	4.8	0.4	None greater than annual	6.3	20-10	20-10	20-10
		Time period	14 days	72 hrs		14 days	Peak	Peak	Peak
		Place	Control Structure	Mellon Rd		Hamilton	Whatawhata	Awakino	Tauranga-Taupo
		Flow cumecs	1249.3	WL only		>650	598.0	247.2	207.1
	Rain-fall	Max. AEP	5-3	5-3	20-10	20-10	10-5	5-3	2-1.6
		Time pd	12 hr	48 hr	12 hr	24 hr	24 hr	12 hr	24 hr
		Place	Wairamarama	Maukoro Landing	Castle Rock	Ruakura	Piniu	Hauturu	Otaipuhi Station
		Rain (mm)	110.5	141.9	149.0	91.9	120.0	129.0	186.0

\* River level frequency analysis for the March event was only completed for peak flows due to the relatively short lived nature of the event.

The highest rainfall and river levels observed in the Coromandel zone were during the March event, with a <2% AEP (Annual Exceedance Probability<sup>1</sup>) river level recorded at Waiwawa and rainfall at Pinnacles (refer Table 2).

The April events were less severe for the Coromandel zone, but impacts occurred more widely throughout the rest of the region. The cumulative effects of the rainfall during the preceding weeks are reflected in the elevated river levels, even though single event rainfall totals were not as extreme. For example, the Mellon Road site on the Piako River recorded a 0.4% frequency event (250 year event), despite rainfall levels only reaching 5-3% AEP frequencies (20 to 30 year event). Significant river levels were also recorded along the Waikato River with 4.8% and 6.3% AEP levels recorded at Control Structure and Hamilton sites respectively.

Figures A1 and A2 in Attachment 1 show the spatial variance of the March and April events.

<sup>1</sup> An Annual Exceedance Probability is the probability of an event occurring in any given year. I.e. a 1% AEP means there is a 1% chance in any given year of the event occurring.

### 3.1 Monthly averages

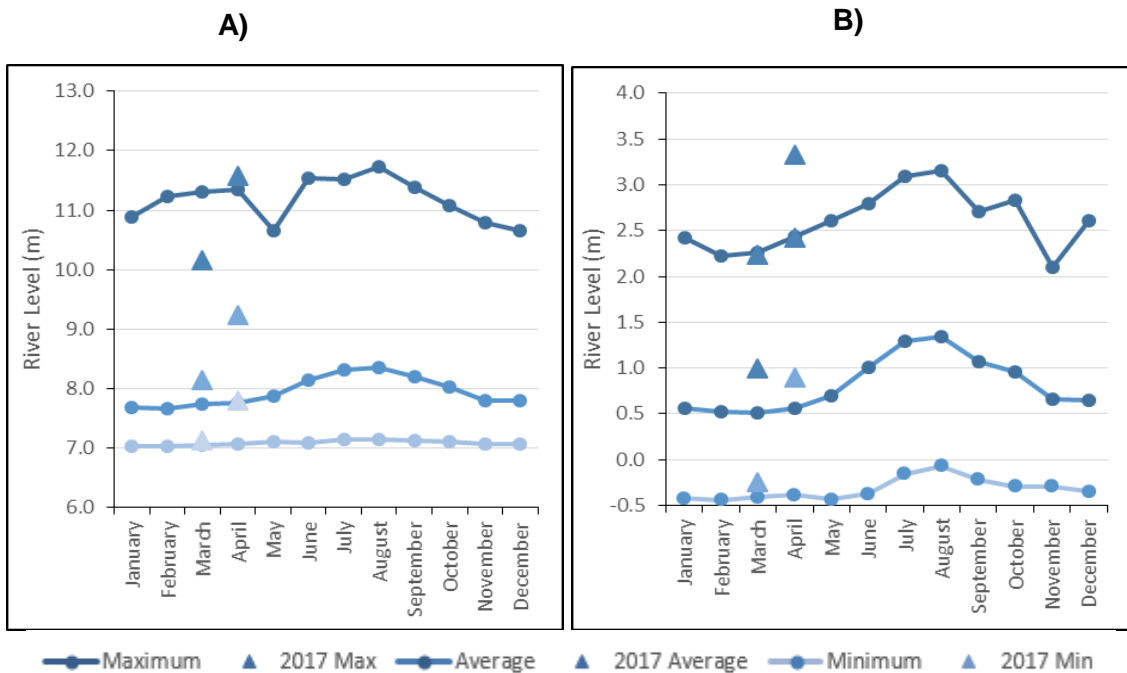
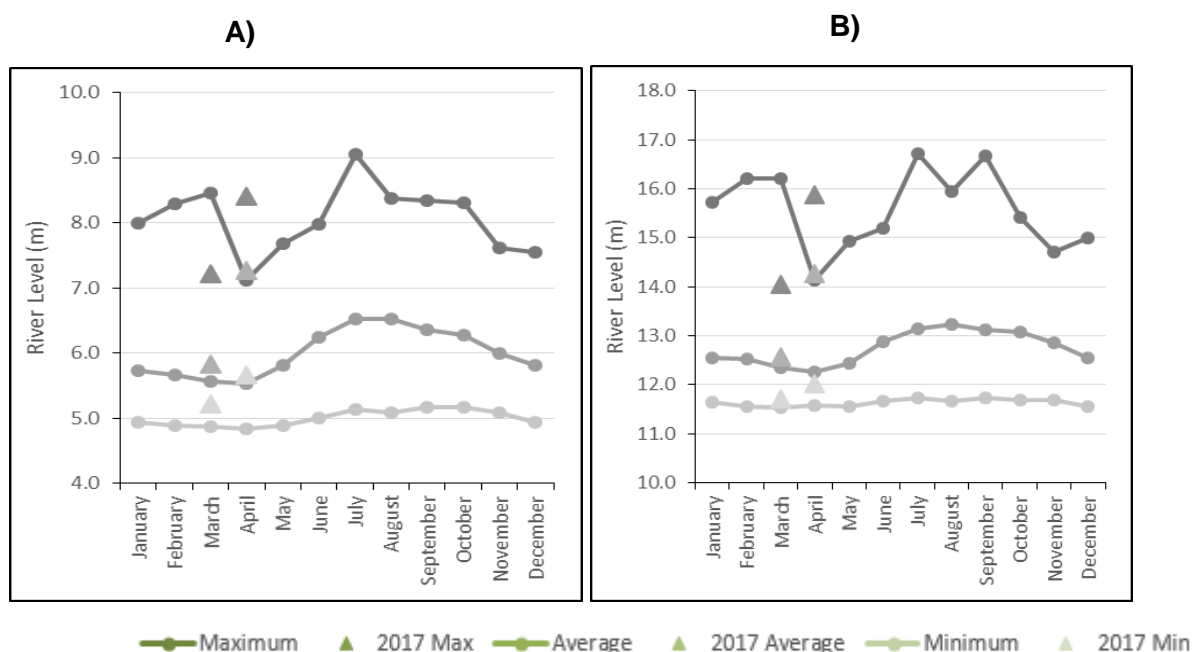


Figure 1: Maximum and minimum river level values in the Waihou/Piako zone recorded at A) Te Aroha (Waihou River); and B) Maukoro Landing (Piako River) during each month over historic records, with monthly averages. March/April 2017 maximums, average, and minimum river levels for comparison.

The river levels caused by the March and April events are significant when compared to previously recorded monthly maximums for many of the sites. The Waihou River (at Te Aroha) recorded the highest April water level (Figure 1 A). The maximum April 2017 water level was 1.4m higher than the usual April average, and only 0.1m from the highest level recorded (records since 1965). In the Piako system, at Maukoro Landing, the highest level ever recorded occurred during April 2017 (records since 1981, Figure 1 B).

At Rangiriri (Figure 2 A), the April 2017 average Waikato River level exceeded all previous April maximums. However, flow and levels did not approach maximum ever recorded levels (July 1998). The Waikato River gauge at Hamilton, also showed April 2017 averages that exceeded all previous April maximum water level records (Figure 2 B).



**Figure 2: Maximum and minimum river level values in the Lower/Central Waikato zones recorded at A) Rangiriri (Waikato River); and B) Hamilton (Waikato River) during each month over historic records, with monthly averages. March/April 2017 maximums, average, and minimum river levels for comparison.**

### 3.2 Predictions for the rest of winter

For many sites the March/April 2017 levels are greater than or approaching mid-winter peaks (June, July; Figure 1 and Figure 2). The latest seasonal outlook from NIWA (<https://www.niwa.co.nz/climate/seasonal-climate-outlook/seasonal-climate-outlook-june-2017-august-2017>) indicates that normal or below normal winter rainfall levels are expected. However, elevated levels and saturated catchments leave the region vulnerable to further high flows and flooding issues even given relatively moderate rainfall events.

## 4. High flow management of Waikato Hydro System (WHS)

Phase 1 of the high flow management plan was initiated on April 4 and the Karapiro discharge increased to 600 cumecs on April 5. Phase 2 was entered on April 6 as Ngaruawahia exceeded 1000 cumecs. To reduce the possibility of entering Phase 3 (uncontrolled discharge of Karapiro dam above 600 cumecs), Taupo gate was reduced to 150 cumecs.

If the early entry into Phase 1, discharge of Karapiro to 600 cumecs and reduced Taupo Gate had not occurred, Phase 3 would have been entered. If Phase 3 was entered, Karapiro discharges could have reached nearly 850 cumecs resulting in significant downstream effects especially through Hamilton (flooding of Anne Street) and the Lower Waikato.

Continued high Karapiro discharges have continued through April, May and into June to ensure there is adequate storage in the WHS and Lake Taupo to manage any further rainfall events over winter.

A summary of the WHS and High Flow Management Plan is contained in Attachment 3.

### 4.1 Lake Taupo water levels

Lake Taupo levels were unusually high coming out of summer. Previous drier summers provided increased storage capacity in Lake Taupo regardless of business interests or consent conditions. This anomaly had been noted prior to the event, and concerns were raised that this would potentially impinge on the ability of council to use Taupo as storage during the event to reduce flood risk to the Lower Waikato. While Mercury manage the lake level to ensure there is sufficient storage to contain a 1% AEP inflow event below the MCL

of 357.25, we understand that there is no provision to also provide storage to reduce flood risk through the Lower Waikato. Lake Taupo water levels over the previous year are shown in Figure A4.

From the March rainfall event, Mercury and council focused on both reducing flood risk of the Lower Waikato and lowering Lake Taupo levels. Discharge through the Lake Taupo gates have been at maximum (300 cumecs) for much of the March to May period to manage water levels below MCL and to create further storage.

During the April rainfall events, Taupo discharge was reduced to manage Karapiro outflows below 600 cumecs, due to high inflows from catchments between Lake Taupo and Karapiro. Lake Taupo Levels then increased to 357.24m (24 hour average), noting that the Mercury consent is based on the 24hr average.

## 5. Regional Flood Report

A full regional technical flood report will be completed shortly and available to committee members as well as being posted on the council's website. Summary reports will also be compiled for each affected Zone to provide an overview of the events in a less technical format. The summary reports will also contain information on the flood schemes and how they operate.

## 6. Zone impacts of floods

### 6.1 Waihou Piako Zone

During each rainfall event, a Tier 2 flood response declaration was made, as per the Flood Response Management Plan. This resulted in a local area flood response office being setup in Paeroa, regular situation (SIT) reports being prepared, recognition that staff were on call and that business as usual (BAU) was put on hold for an extended period.

The cumulative effects of these events have been significant. The Piako River in particular did not have an opportunity to recover between each event and it is now recognised that this may be the ongoing status of the river (above average water levels) over winter.

The heaviest rainfalls recorded during the March 7 to 12 (Tasman Tempest) event were in the Hunua area. These levels reached over 1% AEP (Annual Exceedance Probability<sup>2</sup>) which is equivalent to a 100-year ARI (Annual Return Interval) for 6, 12, and 24 hour time intervals. The Hunua ranges eastern side feed the catchments in the Miranda and Kaiaua area.

Since the Miranda and Kaiaua areas are not covered by flood and river management funding provision, council staff were only able to provide information and advice despite receiving multiple calls from local landowners for assistance. The matter is proposed to be progressed as a 2018 LTP item.

The magnitude of the event resulted in significant debris and gravel movement and stream bank erosion in key waterways. It also resulted in the activation of the Kauaeranga River spillway and captured a significant amount of water behind the Kapukapu dam.

The Kauaeranga River recorded a 10% to 5% AEP (10 to 20 ARI) event immediately after the initial heavy rainfall band (8 March 05:45). This corresponds with the first time the spillway operated during the event. The second time the spillway operated (10 March 23:25) the levels corresponded with a similar sized rainfall event. Although not creating any damage when operating, the river does carry debris which requires removal. This was undertaken by landowners and NZTA.

---

<sup>2</sup> An Annual Exceedance Probability is the probability of an event occurring in any given year. I.e. a 1% AEP means there is a 1% chance in any given year of the event occurring.

In Thames, the Karaka Stream debris trap and sediment pond was re-cleaned after the second event. Houses on Barrett Road required pumping of floodwaters from the Kauaeranga River with council staff assistance.

The Kapukapu dam catchment received a significant amount of rain and peaked at approximately 7m. The debris was removed the following day.

Operations staff also attended affected areas in the Puriri catchment. Pasture and numerous private fences were damaged by large amounts of forestry debris and flood water.

Further investigation showed some erosion, deposition or fencing damage to council land or assets on all of the eastern Waihou Catchments. In particular the Kauaeranga, Puriri, Komata, Hikutaia, and Tararu rivers required large amounts of gravel and or erosion works to be completed.

The impact of the March event was exacerbated by the April events described earlier in this report (Ex-Tropical Cyclone Debbie, Tasman Low and Ex-Tropical Cyclone Cook). The cumulative effects of the three rainfall events caused further disruption and damage to property and infrastructure across the Hauraki plains.

A distinctive feature of the Piako River flood protection scheme is the inclusion of designated ponding zones. These zones help absorb upper catchment peak runoff and smooth the discharges through the lower reaches. This is achieved through a series of prioritised stages. The main river scheme design standard is 2% AEP, (50yr) with spillway banks staged at 10% AEP (10yr) and 5% AEP (20yr).

During ex-tropical Cyclone Debbie, the 2<sup>nd</sup> emergency ponding spillway banks began to overtop. This, although not in the recognised order, is part of the scheme design. Spilling at various points continued from 6 April through to 18 April, with major spilling occurring over the Easter weekend of 14-18 April. The Piako River system the river levels (7.28 m) were approaching highest recorded (7.36 m 8 July 1976). The Waitoa and Piako rivers converge within the 2<sup>nd</sup> emergency ponding area and together produced an impact not previously modelled or understood.

Peak river flows triggered a number of alarms across numerous sites throughout the events. This included the Ohinemuri River at Karangahake which was 0.3m from stoplog deployment at Criterion Bridge in Paeroa.

The peak flows also identified some specific risks. As an example, overtopping on the Whakahoro Canal left bank was caused by a maize crop being grown on the bank, creating a low point which extended for 80m. The impact of this water caused North Road to become washed out making it impassable.

### **Pump operation**

The Waihou Piako flood protection schemes include 52 pumpstations. These pumps provide a service level to the community by transferring water from drainage networks into rivers. During the flood events the call on these assets was significant and well above normal for the time of year. Some pump running exceeded 70% of possible running hours.

### **Recovery works**

Throughout the Waihou Piako zone, staff undertook both ground and aerial inspections as well as connecting with key landowners and external agencies to gauge the extent of damage and to assist in coordinating a response. A flood event remediation plan has also now been prepared. An initial concern was the need to effectively return the ponding zone water to the river.

Some of remediation works have now been resolved, some are currently underway and other work will need to await the next financial year. Some technical investigation work has been identified which will assist to inform Piako scheme performance, and will be incorporated into the Piako Scheme review project.

### Financial Implications – Waihou Piako

The total cost of known immediate clean-up is estimated at \$496,466 (\$264,112 being Waihou and \$232,354 Piako). Based on the event magnitude, these costs will qualify for funding from the Regional Disaster Reserve.

Zone	Activity	Description	Costs
Waihou	River Management	Erosion control, gravel management on scheme rivers, Karaka, Kauaeranga, Tararu, Hikutaia, Komata, Puriri, Ohinemuri rivers including fencing reinstatement.	\$209,431
Waihou	Flood protection assets	Pump station repairs, Kapukapu dam, Flood extent review, mitigation actions. Reinstatement of asset capacity – debris trap clearing, sediment removal.	\$54,681
<b>Total Waihou</b>		<b>Flood protection and River management</b>	<b>\$264,112</b>
Piako	River Management	Erosion control, gravel management on scheme rivers, Ngarua, Torehape streams, Piako and Waitoa rivers including fencing reinstatement.	\$67,620
Piako	Flood protection assets	Pump station repairs, Flood extent review, mitigation actions. Reinstatement of asset capacity – debris trap clearing, sediment removal, desilting of canals and drains. Stopbank core trenching, top up of scouring and low points, bund repair. Manual Pumping	\$164,734
<b>Total Piako</b>		<b>Flood protection and River management</b>	<b>\$232,354</b>

These recovery work costs represent 0.18% of Waihou Piako flood scheme asset value of \$272,221,000.

## 6.2 Lower Waikato Zone impacts

As for Waihou Piako, a Tier 2 flood response declaration was made in the Lower Waikato zone, according to the Flood Response Management Plan. A local area flood response office was set up in Hamilton and regular situation (SIT) reports prepared. Staff were on call over the period and business as usual (BAU) was put on hold for an extended period.

The cumulative effects of these events have been significant. The Lower Waikato River in particular, did not have opportunity to recover between each event due to the need to release water from Karapiro, while also managing Lake Taupo levels, as set out in the provisions of the High Flow Management Plan. It is now recognised above average water levels can be expected over the remaining winter period.

The Lower Waikato flood protection scheme largely operated as designed during the March and April events and design service levels were provided on the whole.

The scheme include 66 pump stations. During the floods the call on these assets was significant and well above normal levels. Some issues arose as a result of local pump failures that resulted in some catchments not meeting the level of service in the early stages. Due to the size and continuous nature of the events, the

pumping capacity locally could not meet a greater than design event which exceeded the 10 year ARI. A number of catchments experienced ponding and loss of pasture as water could not be pumped off pasture within 72 hours. A number of gravity catchments also post storm events still have ponded water, due to the fact that the Lower Waikato River remains high due to extended flows through the Waikato hydro system.

**Recovery works**

A flood event remediation plan has been prepared and issues arising from the events are being progressively addressed. Further investigations will be required in a number of instances.

In terms of timing, some flood response work will be completed by the end of this financial year. Due to scale of some works and the environmental conditions at present, some work will be carried out next financial year.

A register of issues and complaints is also in place and responses are being prepared to address these.

**Financial Implications – Lower Waikato**

The cost of the remedial works and clean-up from these storm events is estimated at \$464,000.

These costs do not include normal maintenance and response costs covered within the annual maintenance and operational programmes. Given the nature of the damage (local pump failures and stopbank breach), these costs qualify for funding from the Regional Disaster Reserve. A summary of the main issues to be funded are:

1. Additional pumping	\$ 12,000
2. Pump and motor overhauls/replacements	\$ 82,000
3. Stopbank repairs	\$ 16,000
4. Mangatawhiri C3 hydraulic motor	\$105,000
5. Mercer West floodgate/stopbank failure	\$150,000
6. Main Channel failure at Rangiriri	<u>\$100,000</u>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$464,000</b>

These recovery work costs represent around 0.39% of the Lower Waikato local flood protection scheme asset value of \$119,118,000.

### 6.3 Coromandel Zone impacts

The 7 to 11 March event resulted in significant debris and gravel movement in key waterways, stream bank erosion and land slips on both coasts. In the Whangamata Catchment, sediment and forestry slash caused blockages to waterways and roads (most severe at Te Weiti Stream), damage to farm, private and commercial properties and damage to coastal marine areas.

There was also significant damage in the Rangihau sub-catchment (Whitianga), related to the Waiwawa River and Rangihau Stream. Impacts and damage from slipping and the consequential sediment and debris flows created significant erosion to riverbanks and damage to fencing, farmland and property. The banks and abutments to the Coroglen Bridge were monitored over a number of nights by NZTA engineers to ensure the bridge was not at risk.

On the Thames coast, the most significant damage was to the catchments south of Coromandel Town to Waikawau. In the Waikawau and Manaia streams, there was significant stream bank erosion and landslips.

The Thames Coast Schemes were relatively un-damaged although there was significant rainfall and flooding in many areas. Grahams Creek Scheme in Tairua also performed well, requiring only a low level of remediation and maintenance.

#### Recovery works

The impact was exacerbated by further heavy rainfall from sub-tropical cyclone Debbie on 5 April 2017 and Ex-Tropical Cyclone Cook on 12 and 13 April 2017. The majority of the Coromandel Peninsula were affected by the cumulative impacts from these multiple events, with the timing of remedial works being particularly hard to programme and also re-work required in some instances.

In terms of timing of those works, the bulk of remediation was completed by the end of May, with some items to be completed in the next financial year. Due to the extent of in-stream work required at Waikawau River on the Thames Coast, the significant remediation required at this site is planned to be carried out by July 2017, the next in-stream period for river management works.

#### Financial Implications

The 7 March 2017 event exceeded the threshold for funding from the Zone Disaster Reserve. For the schemes that have operating reserves, the cost can be covered via those reserves. However, \$201,379 (rounded to \$202,000) is recommended by Coromandel Catchment Committee to be drawn from the Regional Disaster Reserve to cover the recovery works listed in the table below.

Area	Description	Est cost
Grahams Creek <b>Flood Scheme</b>	Channel and around structure needs to be excavated to reinstate capacity. Weir/stock crossing needs to be reinstated, debris in paddock and from fences needs to be removed.	\$13,752
Waiomu Stream <b>Flood Scheme</b>	Erosion control and repair on scheme assets.	\$1,800
Thames Coast	Multiple tree removals, blockages, gravel extraction and management to reinstate capacity. Erosion control and prevention. Notable - Severe stream-bank erosion on Waikawau River.	\$134,307
Northern Coromandel	Erosion control, tree removal, some gravel management and laying involved to prevent further erosion.	\$4,500
South/East Coromandel	Multiple tree removals, vegetation blockages erosion control and gravel extraction and management to reinstate capacity as well as placing some rivers and streams back within their natural flow paths. Notable – high numbers of channel blockages due to forestry slash and resulting silt and gravel accumulation.	\$48,820
<b>Total</b>	<b>Flood Protection and River Management</b>	<b>\$201,379</b>

## 6.4 Waipa Zone impacts

Localised flooding of farmland was extensive throughout the catchment, including overtopping of a local Ohote drainage stopbank (5-year standard) on several occasions.

The Otorohanga flood control system performed well. While the stopbanks were not fully tested, the pumps in all three pump stations operated (some for up to 11hrs continuously), with sufficient water levels to test all six pumps. Full pumping capacity was not required at any point. The Otorohanga District Council were pleased with the performance of all aspects of the flood control system and have identified the upgrading of the pump stations power supply systems as a potential improvement to ensure compatibility with the use of generators, in case of power failure.

Limited areas of localised shallow landslides has been observed in the hill country catchments, serving as a useful reminder of the underlying vulnerability of pastoral landuse on steep slopes. High flows have caused issues with localised river bank erosion, trees tipping in channels and flood debris damaging riparian fencing. Staff have been kept busy responding to landowners concerns and undertaking urgent remedial work.

The rainfall events in April have created a significant amount of immediate work, disrupting planned programme work and there remains a backlog of known issues to be followed up on over the next 12 months.

## 7. Conclusion

The 2017 autumn period has produced record rainfall and river flows which has gave rise to impacts in the Coromandel, Waihou/Piako, Waipa and Lower Waikato Zones. Overall, council flood and drainage schemes have performed as designed, but with some localised issues. The saturated catchments are likely to continue over the winter months, increasing the possibility of further significant impacts within our zones.

Remediation works will be required within those zones most affected. Repair costs of \$1.6 million have been confirmed within the Waihou Piako, Lower Waikato, and Coromandel zones and will be progressed within council disaster policy funding provisions.

---

*Rick Liefting*  
*Team Leader, Regional Hazards*

---

*Adam Munro*  
*Manager, Hauraki/Coromandel Catchments*

---

*Clare Crickett*  
*Director, Integrated Catchment Management*

Attachments:

1. Spatial variance of the March and April events
2. Relationship between Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) and Annual Return Interval (ARI)
3. Waikato Hydro Scheme and High Flow Management

# Attachment 1

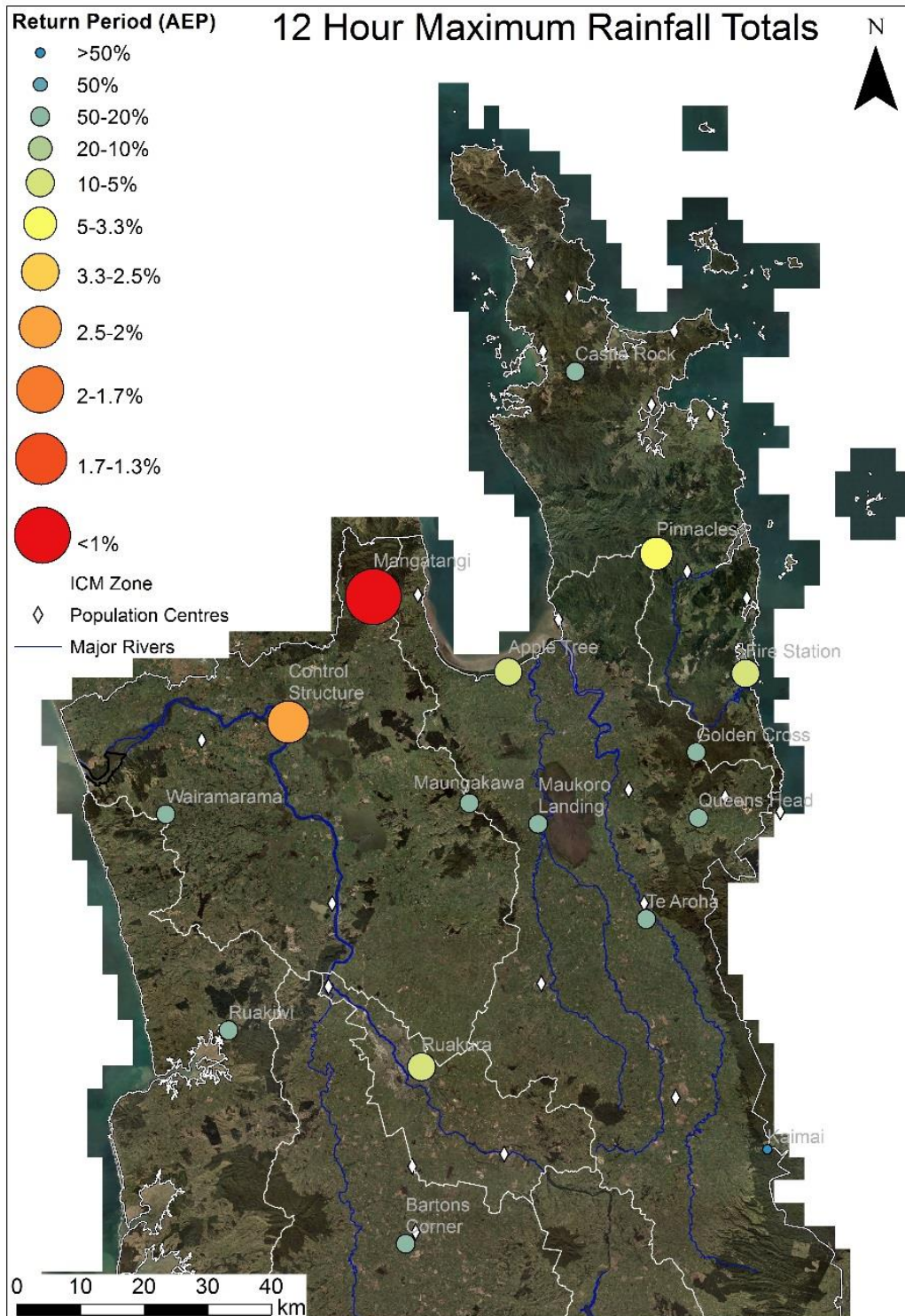
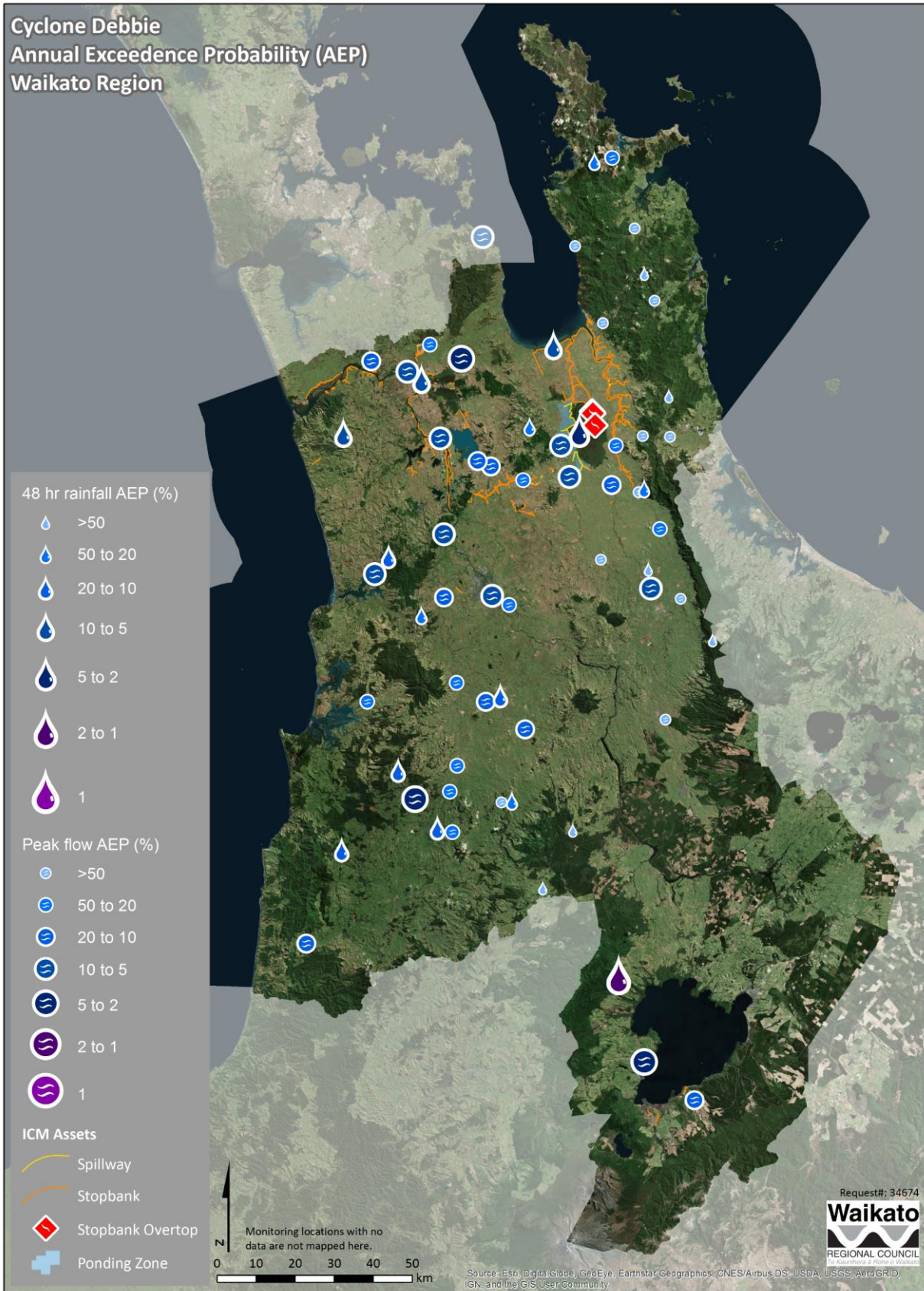


Figure A3: map showing rainfall frequency for the March events over a 12 hour period.



DISCLAIMER: While Waikato Regional Council has exercised all reasonable skill and care in controlling the contents of this information, Waikato Regional Council accepts no liability in contract, tort or otherwise howsoever, for any loss, damage, injury expense (whether direct, indirect or consequential) arising out of the provision of this information or its use by you.

**Figure A2: map showing rainfall and river flow frequency for the April (cook) events over a 48 hour period.**

## Attachment 2

Table A4: Relationship between Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) and Annual Return Interval (ARI). Note that ARI can also be referred to as Return Period. The table also shows the approximate probability (based on an example distribution) of an event occurring over varying time periods.

ARI (Year)	AEP (%)	Time Period (year)						
		2	5	10	20	50	100	200
2	50%	75%	97%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
5	20%	36%	67%	89%	99%	100%	100%	100%
10	10%	19%	41%	65%	88%	99%	100%	100%
20	5%	10%	23%	40%	64%	92%	99%	100%
50	2%	4%	10%	18%	33%	64%	87%	98%
100	1%	2%	5%	10%	18%	39%	63%	87%
200	0.5%	1%	2%	5%	10%	22%	39%	63%

## Attachment 3

# Waikato Hydro Scheme & High Flow Management

## Background

### Waikato Hydro Scheme

The Waikato River is the longest in New Zealand at 425 km and has a catchment area of 14,258 km<sup>2</sup>. Both the Lake Taupo and lower Waikato River catchments are highly modified. There are currently eight dams located on the Waikato River which are currently managed by Mercury Energy. Lake Taupo contains 93% of the storage of the Waikato hydro system with only 7% being able to be stored within the eight dams (Figure A3).

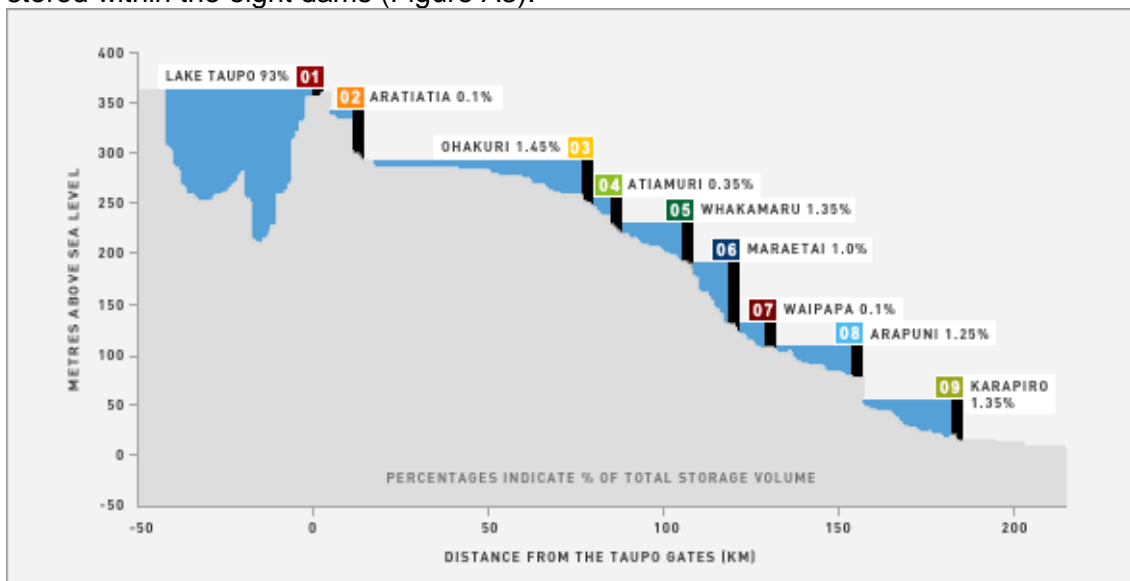


Figure A3: Graph showing the 8 Waikato Hydro-dams (plus the Lake Taupo Gates, their location, elevation, and relative storage capacity (taken from: <https://www.mercury.co.nz/About/Renewable-Energy/Hydro-Generation.aspx>)

The status of Lake Taupo and its tributaries affect the management of the entire Waikato River with the flow of the Waikato River downstream of Karapiro Dam is dependent on the operating regime of the Waikato River hydro scheme run by Mercury Energy.

## High flow management plan

The granting of the Mighty River Power (MRP) (now Mercury Energy) resource consents in 2006 required MRP to develop a high flow management plan (HFMP) to describe how the Waikato hydro system would be managed during high flow conditions.

The plan is required to demonstrate:

- How the hydro system will be operated to meet dam safety requirements.
- How the system will be operated to limit the adverse effects of a flood including the effects on Lake Taupo, the hydro reservoirs and the Waikato River downstream of Karapiro.
- How Mercury Energy will assist the Waikato Regional Council (WRC) in its role as flood coordinator.

The objectives of the HFMP are to:

- Ensure that roles and responsibilities are clear and understood between WRC and Mercury Energy.
- To monitor tributary inflows in the Waikato hydro scheme catchments during times of high flow.

- To ensure that communication protocols are clear between WRC, Mercury Energy, and external parties.
- To ensure that information on catchment and river flows during high flow events is transparent to WRC.
- To ensure Mercury Energy complies with all resource consent conditions.

## High flow phases

High flow management is based on decision making with WRC in conjunction with Mercury Energy and Genesis Energy and involves a series of phases. There are three phases in the HFMP:

### Phase 1

Phase 1 is an early warning discretionary phase. It allows the reservoirs to be drawn down in advance of a catchment storm predicted by weather forecast data supplied by MetService. Triggers for Phase 1 are:

- The flow in the Waikato River at Ngaruawahia exceeds 650 m<sup>3</sup>/sec OR
- Lake Taupo level exceeds 357 m above sea level OR
- One or more flood table discharge levels (FTDL) are likely to be exceeded AND
- High flows are anticipated

### Phase 2

Phase 2 is usually entered into when rainfall that has been forecast starts falling. Phase 2 provides for actions to be taken during heavy rain or flood events to limit the effect of flooding. Triggers for phase 2 are:

- The flow in the Waikato River at Ngaruawahia exceeds 1000 m<sup>3</sup>/sec OR
- Lake Taupo levels exceed 35.25 m above sea level OR
- One or more FTDL are likely to be exceeded AND
- High flows are anticipated

### Phase 3

Phase 3 is entered when three or more power stations FTDL are exceeded, if three FTDL are exceeded outflows from Lake Taupo must be reduced to 50 m<sup>3</sup>/sec.

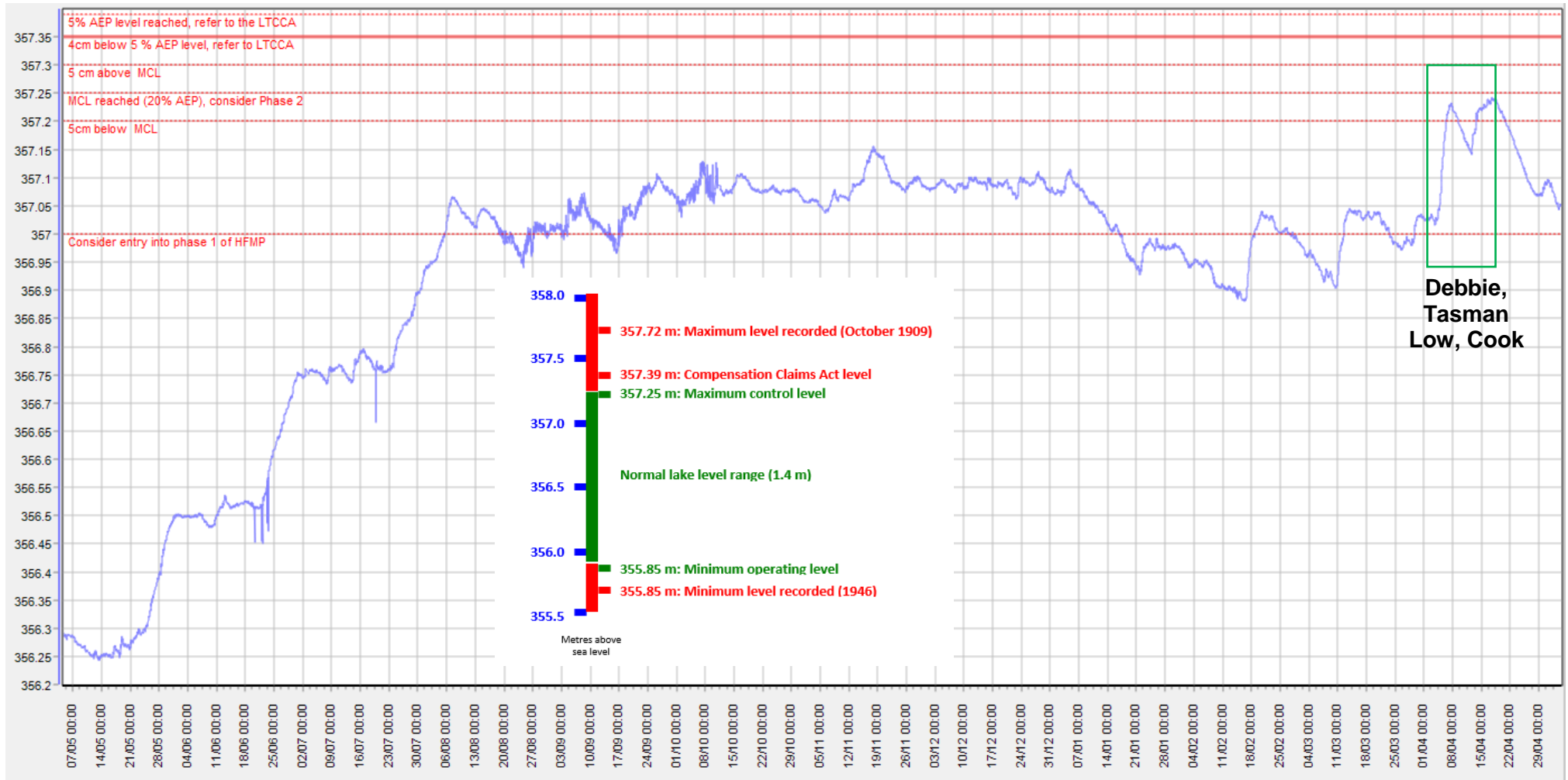


Figure A4: One year (2016/17) of Lake Taupo levels (in m RL), showing significantly higher lake levels than at the same time last year, with inset showing minimum, normal and maximum levels.

*For Information*

**Summary of Section B Recommendations to Council in reports from Catchment Committee and Drainage Advisory Subcommittee Meetings  
April, May and June 2017**

	Page Ref
<b>Upper Waikato Catchment Committee 19 May 2017</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the corrections to the recommendations ... [below] (made prior to the confirmation of the minutes of the meeting of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee of 24 March 2017, be adopted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>THAT</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>... the Minutes of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 24 March 2017 be received and approved as a correct record subject to: ...</li> <li>b. the amendment of recommendation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 17/09 (relating to the report 'Whirinaki Arm Restoration Project') on page 6 of the minutes so that it reads: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>'RECOMMENDED</b></li> <li><b>THAT</b> the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the preparation of a concept proposal and the resourcing to undertake the next step of scoping and developing a strategy.'</li> </ul> </li> <li>• 17/12 (relating to report 'Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan') on page 7 of the minutes so that it reads: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>'RECOMMENDED</b></li> <li><b>THAT</b> the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the preparation of a business case to expand Council's possum control operation in the South Waikato, through the Long Term Plan.'</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> consideration is given to issues of high importance to the zone being (without limitation): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the rate and type of incident response;</li> <li>• a proactive and collaborative approach with landowners;</li> <li>• levels of service relating to TBfree roll off and wallaby control; and</li> <li>• the implementation of the Upper Waikato zone plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the proposed new inspection process in the Upper Waikato Zone.</li> <li>2 Council note that the proposed new inspection regime for Upper Waikato will alter the three yearly inspection cycle specified in the Upper Waikato Zone Plan and agree to a change to this Plan to move the regime to a risk based approach.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>	196-200
<b>Lake Taupō Catchment Committee 5 May 2017</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Lake Taupō Zone Plan (Doc 10360106) be adopted following input from Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board on section 2.4.1 and other minor editorial amendments.</li> </ul>	205

<p><b>Lower Waikato Catchment Committee 18 May 2017</b></p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee request, on behalf of all farmers and all their drains, an immediate review of Council's application of the ResourceManagement Act drain cleaning consent process to make it possible for farmers to apply for a generic overarching resource consent.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Council review the procedures, in a non-regulatory environment, for dealing with invasive species such as koi carp and yellow bristle grass.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Council look at introducing the herpes disease from Australia that kills koi carp to eradicate and/or control koi carp and that this matter be addressed through its 2018-2028 Long Term Plan and the Regional Pest Management Plan review.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Council look at the options for having their own machinery to assist in the delivery on its work programmes.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee approve the use of the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to pay for operational costs totalling \$314,000 incurred as a result of the March/April flood events for both this year and next year as those costs are incurred.</li> </ul>	<p><b>215-220</b></p>
<p><b>West Coast Catchments Committee 6 June 2017</b></p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the West Coast Catchments Committee recommends to Council, via ICM to advise the public; and make a request to the public by way of a media release not to bring any Myrtle species of plants into the West Coast Zone until the outbreak is controlled.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the West Coast Catchments Committee endorse the recommendation that arose from the 24 April 2017 committee workshop to support the 52% targeted rate increase for the 2017/2018 Annual Plan.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Weo Maag be appointed as Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Mark Smythe be appointed as Deputy Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee.</li> </ul>	<p><b>223-228</b></p>
<p><b>Waihou Piako Zone Catchment Committee 26 May 2017</b></p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request that Council transfer \$264,112 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Waihou Zone Reserve to fund the March and April 2017 storm damage recovery works within the Waihou Zone.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request that Council transfer \$232,354 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Piako Zone Reserve to fund the March and April 2017 storm damage recovery works within the Piako Zone.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request a report identifying the numbers of koi carp present and ways in which they might be able to be controlled within the Waihou Piako zone.</li> </ul>	<p><b>241; 245</b></p>
<p><b>Coromandel Catchment Committee 15 May 2017</b></p>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the initiative to seek funding from third party sources, channelled through the Waikato Regional Council, as they arise in accordance with Zone priorities.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Coromandel Catchment Committee request that Council transfer</li> </ul>	<p><b>253-256</b></p>

<p>\$202,000.00 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Coromandel Zone Reserve to fund the March 2017 storm damage recovery works in the Coromandel Zone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the transfer of \$100,000 from the Coromandel General Operating Reserve to the Coromandel Zone Disaster Reserve.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Coromandel Catchment Committee agree in principle to the allocation of \$300,000 of Coromandel General Operating Reserve towards implementation of Harbour and Catchment Management Plan 'step-change' (outside of business as usual) activities over a three year period, beginning the 2018/19 financial year.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Coromandel Catchment Committee agree in principle to the allocation of \$150,000 of Coromandel General Operating Reserve over the next three (3) years for Implementation of Focus Catchment Project activities, beginning in the 17/18 financial year.</li> <li>• <b>THAT</b> Option 3, Partial Revised Mangrove Clearance in Tairua is recommended to the Project Steering Group, subject to confirmation at the next meeting of the Tairua-Pauanui Community Board.</li> </ul>	
<b>Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee 29 May 2017</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the rate requirement be recommended to Council for 2017/18.</li> </ul>	<b>272</b>
<b>Waikato Central Drainage Subcommittee 2 June 2017</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>THAT</b> the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Committee supports budgets that ensure, as a minimum, current levels of service are maintained.</li> </ul> <p><b>THAT</b> the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee support in principle the proposed boundary changes in the Matangi area, and recommend this be included in the upcoming 2018-28 Long Term Plan.</p>	<b>281</b>

---

**Upper Waikato Catchment Committee  
MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee held at the Central North Island Kindergarten Association, 6 Glenshea Street, Putaruru on 19 May 2017 at 9am.

<p><b>Waikato Regional Council</b> <b>Taupō District Council</b> <b>Rotorua District Council</b> <b>South Waikato District Council</b> <b>Local Community Representatives</b></p>	<p><b>Present:</b> Cr Kathy White Cr Barry Hickling Chris Sutton Cr Herman Van Rooijen Colin Guyton Roku Mihinui Richard Stokes – Deputy Chair Debbie Robertson Henk Weijers Sally Strang - Chair</p>
<p><b>Forestry Representative – Kaingaroa</b></p>	
<p><b>Waikato Regional Council Councillors and Staff</b></p>	<p><b>In Attendance:</b> Anne McLeod – Manager – Upper Waikato/Taupō Area Cr Barry Quayle Allan Kirk – Zone Manager - Upper Waikato/Taupō Area Greg Ryan – Principal Advisor Sarah McLeay – Democracy Advisor Katherine Glasgow – Senior Catchment Management Officer Deborah Nickel – Catchment Management Officer</p>

**Apologies**

Evelyn Forrest - Te Arawa (Ngāti Tahu – Ngāti Whaoa Runanga Trust)  
 Mason Jackson - Mercury  
 Mark Seymour – Local Community Representative  
 Natasha Hayward – Department of Conservation  
 Cr Stu Kneebone – Chair, Integrated Catchment Management Committee (South)  
 Adrian Brocksopp  
 George Moss  
 Grant Kettle  
 Alice Barnett  
 Linda Te Aho  
 Colin Maunder – Forestry Representative - Tokoroa  
 Roku Mihinui for lateness

**Accepted**

Apologies from Grant Kettle for the previous meeting on 24 March were accepted. These were received by email the morning of that meeting but due to travel and timing, were not noted at that meeting.

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Confirmation of Agenda**

Agenda Item 2

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Debbie Robertson seconded.

UWCC17/14

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the agenda of the meeting of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee of 19 May 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business of the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/14)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

Agenda item 3

There were no disclosures of interest.

Colin Guyton joined the meeting at 9.10am

**Public Forum**

Agenda item 4

Anne McLeod – Manager – Upper Waikato/Taupō Area outlined the rules of the forum in the report for this item. One member of the local community in Putaruru township participated in the public forum, raising a concern about the potential for grey exotic pigeons to become a pest in town. It was conveyed that there had been a notable increase in numbers in recent times. Waikato Regional Council staff undertook to follow up with the person concerned. At 9.20am the local community member participating left the meeting.

Roku Mihinui joined the meeting at 9.20am.

Cr Herman Van Rooijen was permitted by the Chair to address the Committee as a member of the public to relay concerns that had been brought to his attention relating to bristle grass.

Yellow bristle grass was being introduced to the South Waikato District on the machinery used to maintain road-side markers. It invaded crops such as maize and competed in pasture with species of greater nutritional value to stock. Cr Van Rooijen asked whether there was any way of preventing the seed from spreading as it was very invasive.

During discussion the following was noted:

- There may be better ways of keeping road markers visible. Responsibility may also sit with the District Council and the New Zealand Transport Agency.
- Seed was spread by contractors as they moved from paddock to paddock. There was a high level of resistance to preventive machine washing.
- Work was being undertaken at present to identify better methods of control. There may be a need for regulation. In recent times it had become wide spread and is considered a high impact pest.

#### **Action**

Staff would provide a report on yellow bristle grass to the next meeting.

Cr Kathy White moved/Richard Stokes seconded

UWCC17/15

#### **RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Public Forum' (Doc 4102080) dated 11 May 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/15)**

## **SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL**

### **Minutes of Previous Meeting**

Agenda item 5 Doc 10264925

Matters arising from the minutes of the last meeting:

- Recommendations UWCC17/09 and UWCC17/12 required correction.
- Recommendation UWCC17/11 was part of the discussion only. However, because the moving member recorded was not available for comment it would be considered for revocation at the next meeting.

#### **Action**

- Staff would raise recommendation UWCC17/11 of the minutes of the meeting of Upper Waikato Catchment Committee of 24 March 2017 for possible revocation at the next meeting pursuant to paragraph 3.9.18 of the 'Model Standing Orders' (NZS9202:2003).
- It was possible to audiotape meetings, however this was currently undertaken only at the discretion of the Democracy Advisors where there were good reasons identified to justify an additional record. The issue of audio recording was currently being discussed at Council level.

Chris Sutton moved/Cr Kathy White seconded.

UWCC17/16

#### **RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the Minutes of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 24 March 2017 be received and approved as a correct record subject to:**

- a. removing the heading on page 6 of the minutes that reads 'Whirinaki Arm Restoration Project move to after the ICMC reports' and replacing it with the correct heading 'Whirinaki Arm Restoration Project'
- b. the amendment of recommendation:
  - 17/09 on page 6 of the minutes so that it reads:

**'RECOMMENDED**

***THAT the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the preparation of a concept proposal and the resourcing to undertake the next step of scoping and developing a strategy.'***

- 17/12 on page 7 of the minutes' so that it reads:

**'RECOMMENDED**

***THAT the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the preparation of a business case to expand Council's possum control operation in the South Waikato, through the Long Term Plan.'***

- c. considering the removal of recommendation 17/11 at the next meeting when other members present at the time are available for comment.

- 2 the Extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting held on 13 April 2017 (Doc 10264925) and from the meeting of Council on 27 April 2017 (Doc 10317792) be received.

Cr Kathy White voted against the motion relating to the item 'Proposed pest management response to 2016-2055 National Bovine Tuberculosis Pest Management Plan' in keeping with her original vote on this item.

The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/16)

Cr Kathy White moved/Richard Stokes seconded

UWCC17/17

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the corrections to the recommendations above (made prior to the confirmation of the minutes of the meeting of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee of 24 March 2017, be adopted.**

The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/17)

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Issues/Actions from Upper Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting March 2017**

Agenda item 6 Doc 40900026

Presented by Anne McLeod – Manager – Upper Waikato/Taupō Area to report back on actions and issues discussed from the previous Upper Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 24 March 2017.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- Overall numbers of reported incidents and responses could be collated but the database is not flexible enough to provide the information on geographic location and response actions taken without involving two to three days of staff time. More flexible/capable

tools for the reporting of incidents may be an issue to raise in the Long Term Plan process. Frequency of incidents occurring in the same location could be particularly useful.

- It was reported by a member that over the last 12 months there had been 58 incidents reported in the Taupo/Upper Waikato area (4% of all incidents received from across the region) and 13 of those were attended.
- Concern was raised over the damage caused by the major rainfall events that had happened over the past few months. The Zone Manager for Upper Waikato/Taupō noted the importance of raising the resilience of the zone.
- Landowners who had attended the Whirinaki Arm meeting were excited about the potential of the proposed project focussing on the catchment.
- Members were reassured that progress had been made with respect to landowners with non-complying soil conservation compartments. There was a 93% level of compliance overall.

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Henk Weijers seconded

UWCC17/18

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Issues/Actions from Upper Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting March 2017” (Doc 4090026) dated 10 May 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/18)**

**Chair’s report**

Agenda item 7 Doc

Presented by the Chair

Sally Strang moved/Cr Kathy White seconded.

UWCC17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the Chair’s report dated May 2017 (Doc 10478849) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/19)**

**SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review**

Agenda item 10 Doc 10415545

Presented by Greg Ryan - Principal Advisor to:

- provide the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan.
- seek feedback from the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee on the known issues impacting its activities that require a response from the Long Term Plan.
- alert the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- There had been an escalation of costs for service delivery alongside increasing environmental outcome expectations. River management was the main focus of the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee. This included river stability, erosion prevention and creating habitat in river channels.

- The impact of hydro schemes in relation to sedimentation and erosion was discussed. Generation companies managed water levels in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council when weather events were expected. The impact of weather events would be greater without the dams. Mercury NZ Ltd's consent may be reviewed under the Resource Management Act in 2018. The decision to undertake a review, or not, was delegated to staff. It was important to ask where the sedimentation was coming from and how the amount coming through the system could be reduced.
- Ongoing issues with emerging pests including Kauri die back and wallabies were noted. This was another area of increasing cost as was the need to cover possum control as TBfree funding was withdrawn.
- A 'lite' review of the zone plan would be undertaken in the next financial year commencing July 2017.
- The importance of planting trees in the catchment was noted. Trees supported erosion protection, environmental beautification and creation of employment.

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Cr Barry Hickling seconded

UWCC17/20

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review' (Doc 10415545) dated 10 May 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/20)**

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Cr Barry Hickling seconded

UWCC17/21

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT consideration is given to issues of high importance to the zone being (without limitation):**

- **the rate and type of incident response;**
- **a proactive and collaborative approach with landowners;**
- **levels of service relating to TBfree roll off and wallaby control; and**
- **the implementation of the Upper Waikato zone plan.**

**Cr Kathy White voted against the motion as it related to the TBfree roll off.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/21)**

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL**

**Criteria for new works funding in Upper Waikato**

Agenda item 8 Doc 10401788

Presented by Katherine Glasgow – Senior Catchment Officer to provide an overview of the criteria Catchment Management Officers will be applying for prioritising funding for new works in the Upper Waikato zone.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- The development of the criteria was identified as an action in the Upper Waikato Zone Plan.
- The criteria sought to take a proactive approach to funding works whilst still making provision for severe accelerated erosion.
- Funded activities must be additional to landowners' compliance requirements.
- Changing land use that matches land use capability was an important consideration.

- The process required landowner agreement. On the whole, landowners understood the benefit to them. Landowner compliance was significantly more likely when Waikato Regional Council maintained good contact.

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Henk Weijers seconded

UWCC17/22

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the report 'Criteria for new works funding in Upper Waikato' (Doc 10401788) dated 19 May 2017 be received.
- 2 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee note the criteria for prioritising new works funding within the Upper Waikato zone.

The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/22)

**SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL**

**Inspections of soil conservation compartments**

Agenda item 9 Doc 10404558

Presented by Katherine Glasgow – Senior Catchment Officer to propose and seek endorsement of a new method for conducting property inspections for soil conservation compartments in the Upper Waikato Zone.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- An amendment to the zone plan was proposed so that the three yearly cycle of inspections was replaced with a risk based inspection approach.
- The suggestion was made that there be an additional 'red' category to identify those who need more frequent visiting than five yearly due to non-compliance.
- Landowner and Waikato Regional Council staff contact would be maintained at current levels.
- It was intended that forecasted savings would be applied to new works.

Chris Sutton moved/Hank Weijers seconded

UWCC17/23

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Inspections of soil conservation compartments' (Doc 10404558) dated 19 May 2017 be received.**

The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/23)

Chris Sutton moved/Hank Weijers seconded

UWCC17/24

**RECOMMENDED THAT**

- 1 the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee endorse the proposed new inspection process in the Upper Waikato Zone.
- 2 Council note that the proposed new inspection regime for Upper Waikato will alter the three yearly inspection cycle specified in the Upper Waikato Zone Plan and agree to a change to this Plan to move the regime to a risk based approach.

The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/24)

**Upper Waikato Zone –Zone Status Report to 31 March 2017**

Agenda item 11 Doc 10401401

Presented by Allan Kirk – Zone Manager - Upper Waikato/Taupō Area to provide the Upper Waikato Catchment Committee with a status report for the third quarter of the 2016-17 year for a number of activities undertaken in the zone.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- The weather events over the last six months had resulted in a greater emphasis on catchment management.
- Landowners found the Whirinaki Arm meeting very useful.

Cr Herman Van Rooijen moved/Colin Maunder seconded.

UWCC17/25

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Upper Waikato - Zone Status Report to 31 March 2107’ (Doc 10401401 dated 8 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (UWCC17/25)**

**General business**

Agenda item 12

The following items of general business were raised:

- Obtaining new resource consents for sewage treatment plants could be very costly for communities. A significant problem for sewage treatment was the need to remove phosphate. One solution was to prevent it entering the system by promoting the use of phosphate free laundry and dishwashing detergents.

Meeting closed at 12.20pm

---

## Lake Taupō Catchment Committee MINUTES

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee held at Taupō District Council's Turangi Service Centre at 3 Turangi Town Centre, Turangi on 5 May 2017 at 10am.

**Chair** – Sue Yerex

**Deputy Chair** – Barry Pope

**Present:**

**Chair, Integrated Catchment  
Management Committee (South)**  
**Genesis Power Limited**  
**Mercury NZ Limited**  
**Local Community Representatives**

Cr Stu Kneebone

Cam Speedy  
Natalie Haines  
Mike Barton  
Jane Penton  
Karen Williams  
Sue Yerex  
Paul Green  
Eric Wilson  
Jackie Egan

**Forestry Representative**

**In Attendance:**

**Waikato Regional Council Staff**

Anne McLeod – Section Manager – Upper Waikato/Taupō  
Sarah McLeay – Democracy Advisor  
Allan Kirk – Zone Manager - Upper Waikato/Taupō  
Greg Ryan - Principal Advisor Integrated Catchment Management  
Clare Crickett – Director Integrated Catchment Management

**Apologies**

Cr Alan Livingston – Waikato Regional Council  
 Cr Kathy White – Waikato Regional Council  
 Cr Rosanne Jollands – Taupō District Council  
 Dave Lumley – Department of Conservation  
 Barry Pope – Community Representative  
 Alice Barnett - Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board

Accepted

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Confirmation of Agenda**

Agenda item 2

Sue Yerex moved/Natalie Haines seconded

LTCC17/12

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the agenda of the meeting of Lake Taupō Catchment Committee of 5 May 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business of the meeting.**

The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/12)

**Disclosures of Interest**

Agenda item 3

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Minutes of previous meeting and extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting**

Agenda item 4

Although a correct record of the presenter's comments at the time, members were cautioned that the reference made to Lake levels in the third paragraph of page 5 of the minutes of the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting of 1 March 2017 should not be treated as fact. It was also noted that Mercury had offered to arrange for their hydrologist to speak to the Residents and Ratepayers Association but they had not taken up this offer.

It was brought to the Committee's attention that there was a resolution missing from the minutes with respect to the Taupo District Council's forward works programme for the foreshore. Members concurred that the resolution had been omitted and that the Tuwharetoa Māori Trust Board representative's abstention from the voting also needed to be included in the minutes.

Eric Wilson moved/Sue Yerex seconded

LTCC17/13

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the minutes of Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting of 1 March 2017 be received and confirmed as a correct record subject to the inclusion of the following omitted resolution along with recording that Alice Barnett abstained from voting:**

*'That the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee actively urge Taupō District Council to finalise and implement the Lake Taupō Foreshore Forward Works Programme.'*

- 2 **the resolution omitted from the minutes of Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting of 1 March 2017 set out above be provided to the next Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting for the action of that Committee in the usual manner.**
- 3 **the Extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting of 13 April 2017 as included in the agenda for this meeting be received.**

The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/13)

### **Issues/Actions from Lake Taupō Catchment Committee Meeting 1 March 2017**

Agenda item 5 Doc 4090015

Anne McLeod – Section Manager – Upper Waikato/Taupō reported back on actions and issues discussed from the previous Lake Taupō Catchment Committee meeting held on 1 March 2017.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- An update was given on the progress of submissions made by member groups to the Ministry for the Environment on the Government's Freshwater Policy document. The E.coli targets were complicated, so further clarification would be required. Public concern about swimability was a distraction from other important matters.

#### **Action**

- Staff would circulate the Waikato Regional Council submission to all members.

Karen Williams moved/Mike Barton seconded.

LTCC17/14

#### **RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Issues/Actions from Lake Taupo Catchment Committee Meeting 1 March 2017' (doc 4090015) dated 26 April 2017 be received.**

The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/14)

### **Chair's Report for May 2017**

Agenda item 6 Doc 10358703 and 10358795

Presented by the Chair

During discussion the following points were noted:

- Thanks to Waikato Regional Council staff for work undertaken during the recent major weather events.
- In response to a member's question, the Director - Integrated Catchment Management commented that scheduled time frames for release of Calicivirus to control rabbit populations had not been met. Release would occur first in the South Island. It was also noted that the virus is not the only 'tool in the toolbox' and is only likely to achieve a 30% knockdown.

Sue Yerex moved/Cam Speedy seconded

- LTCC17/15      **RESOLVED**  
**THAT the report 'Chair's Report for May 2017' (Doc 10358703) dated 27 April 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/15)**

## **SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL**

### **Lake Taupo Zone Plan**

Agenda item 7 Doc 10351732 and 10360106

Presented by Allan Kirk – Zone Manager - Upper Waikato/Taupō the report introduced the Zone Plan for Lake Taupō Zone and sought a recommendation from the Lake Taupō Catchment Committee for Waikato Regional Council approval for the Lake Taupō Zone Plan.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- It was queried whether the first action on page 61 of the agenda provided sufficient direction for staff especially in relation to biodiversity and biodiversity values. The Section Manager advised that staff had been working on guidelines for new works funding to ensure that a constant approach was taken by the Catchment Management Officers. These guidelines would be provided to members for their information and interest.

#### **Action**

- Staff would provide members with the relevant policy material.
- Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board requested input into section 2.4.1 of the Draft Zone Plan on pages 38 and 39 of the agenda before it goes to Waikato Regional Council.
- In an earlier draft of the Plan, the last action on page 56 of the agenda had included the words "Advocate for biosecurity managers to be able to use the best available tools to achieve a healthy catchment – *this may include x*". The final version has a full stop after "healthy catchment". The Committee considered the merits of giving examples and were clear that they wanted the "best available tools to be used". Members also thought technology was moving fast in this space and the statement in the final document best accommodated this.

Eric Wilson moved/Paul Green seconded

- LTCC17/16      **RESOLVED**  
**THAT the report 'Lake Taupo Zone Plan' (Doc 10351732) dated 27 April 2017 be received**

**The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/16)**

Eric Wilson moved/Paul Green seconded

- LTCC17/17      **RECOMMENDED**  
**THAT the Lake Taupō Zone Plan (Doc 10360106) be adopted following input from Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board on section 2.4.1 and other minor editorial amendments.**

**The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/17)**

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review**

Agenda item 8 Doc 10326585

Presented by Greg Ryan Principal Advisor, the report provided an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan; sought feedback on known issues impacting Waikato Regional Council activities requiring a Long Term Plan response; and provided an alert to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- There was an increasing expectation that assets will perform in the face of unusual environmental incidents such as the recent weather events. Associated level of service expectations were also an issue.
- There were a number of emerging biosecurity issues to be dealt with such as wallabies and kauri die back.
- A draft business case would be presented at the next meeting setting out actions in response to the withdrawal of TBfree possum control in parts of the zone.
- The options presented to deal with issues impacting or having a potential impact across the Waikato region on page 89 of the agenda appeared to be a long way apart. There would be community resistance to options that involved high increases in rates. At this stage future service requirements were uncertain.

**Action**

- The Chair would work with staff to co-ordinate canvassing of views from the members on the options in the agenda item and that the Chair would provide these views to the Integrated Catchment Management Committee at its meeting in June.

Cr Stu Kneebone moved/Natalie Haines seconded

LTCC17/18

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review' (Doc 10326585) dated 26 April 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/18)**

**Lake Taupo – Zone Status Report**

Agenda item 9 Doc 10276998

Presented by Allan Kirk – Zone Manager - Upper Waikato/Taupō the report provided an updated status report for activities undertaken in the zone.

During discussion the following points were noted:

- Staff were congratulated on their work and ensuring confidence in zone assets. The Zone Manager commented that all parties were working well together and there was a real commitment from Taupō District Council.
- It was pleasing to see the difficult issues surrounding Tokaanu Stream remedial work resolved and the Zone Manager was congratulated on his leadership on this project. Work on the Hangarito Stream was progressing well given weather conditions. Issues with these streams had been caused by natural events.
- Gravel removal in the Tongariro River bed adjacent to the Kohineheke Reserve is on hold awaiting approval from Turangitukua.

- It was likely that the results of the Tongariro and Tauranga Taupō Scheme reviews would be available at the next meeting.

Cr Stu Kneebone/Karen Williams

LTCC17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Lake Taupo - Zone Status Report to 1 April 2017' (Doc 10276998) dated April 26 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (LTCC17/19)**

**Meeting closed at 12.10pm**

---

**Waipa Catchment Committee  
MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Waipa Catchment Committee held at Te Awamutu Bible Chapel, 110 Chapel Drive, Te Awamutu on 3 May 2017 at 10:00am.

	<b>Present:</b>	
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	Cr Kataraina Hodge	
<b>Waipa District Council</b>	Cr Bruce Thomas	
<b>Otorohanga District Council</b>	Cr Roy Johnson	
<b>Waitomo District Council</b>	Cr Phil Brodie	
<b>Waikato District Council</b>	Cr Noel Smith	
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	Neil Barnett	Bill Garland
	Rachel Barton (Chair)	
	Rosemary Davison	
	John Oliver	
<b>Mercury</b>		
<b>Department of Conservation</b>	Natasha Hayward	
<b>Dairy NZ</b>	Mike Bramley	
<b>Beef &amp; Lamb</b>		
<b>Maniapoto Maori Trust Board</b>		
<b>Raukawa Charitable Trust</b>		
<b>Waikato-Tainui (Nga Uri o Mahanga)</b>		
<b>Chairman, Integrated Catchment Management Committee</b>	Cr Stu Kneebone	
<b>Chairman of Council or Deputy Chair of Council</b>	Cr Alan Livingston	

**Apologies**

**Organisation: Maniapoto Maori Trust Board**  
Name Weo Maag

**Organisation: Local Community Representative**  
Name Mark Frederickson

**Organisation: Mercury Energy**  
Name Larnie Chrystall

Accepted

**Confirmation of Agenda**  
(Agenda Item 2)

Cr B Thomas moved/Cr P Brodie seconded.

**WaipaC17/10**      **THAT the agenda of the meeting of the Waipa Catchment Committee of 3 May 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (WaipaC17/10)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

(Agenda Item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Minutes of Previous Meeting**

File: 03 02 34 (Agenda Item #4) Doc #10139903 and 10323380

The Committee was presented with the minutes of the previous Waipa Catchment Committee meeting of 16 March 2017 and an extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Meeting of 13 April 2017.

During discussion, the following points were noted:

- The Committee wanted to clarify that while there had been discussion regarding afforestation at the last Catchment Meeting and that it was an appropriate land use option in some circumstances, not all members were necessarily promoting afforestation themselves.
- The Committee discussed the Waikato River Authority presentation and concerns were raised that funding was only being offered for large-scale projects. It was suggested that proposals could be 'sub-catchment' based with several farmers making funding requests as one project. The Committee discussed the somewhat piecemeal approach to works undertaken with the 'standalone' Waikato River Authority funded projects. The Committee was advised that, while this had been the approach in part to get 'runs on the board', the funded works were becoming more co-ordinated and prioritised moving forward as part of the priority catchment work and as informed through the Waikato Waipa River Restoration Strategy.

R Barton moved/Cr A Livingston seconded.

**WaipaC17/11**      **1. THAT the Minutes of the Waipa Catchment Committee meeting of 16 March 2017 be received and approved as a true and correct record**  
**2. THAT the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting of 13 April 2017 be received. .**

**The motion was put and carried (WaipaC17/11)**

**Chairs Report**

Chair (Rachel Barton) advised this was her first time chairing the meeting and thanked the Committee for their support.

The Committee was advised that the last Integrated Catchment Management (ICM) meeting (13 April 2017) was brief due to the bad weather meaning several members could not travel. The Waipa Catchment Committee resolutions from the 16 March 2017 meeting were received at ICM.

The Committee agreed at this point to switch item 5 and 6 in the agenda.

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update April 2017.**

File: 03 02 34 (Agenda Item #6) Doc #10271273

Presented by ICM Principal Advisor (Greg Ryan) the report provided the Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan (LTP). Furthermore, the report sought feedback on the known issues impacting on activities which require a response from this LTP and alerted the Committee on other issues that may require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following points:

- Funding is prioritised, which changes depending on circumstances. This means there is a backlog of work. The Council was looking to resource a River Management and Catchment Management officer to implement an enlarged programme of Waipa work. These positions would be predominantly funded from existing budgets and other options, which had not yet been fully considered. The Committee advised concerns in regards to increasing rates to fund these positions.
- The Committee discussed the options for the proposed increases to the 'Waipa Capital River Improvement' budget. Concerns were raised regarding the use of reserves as if this process was not managed appropriately, it could lead to further rate increases in the future.
- While there was an expectation on farmers to be proactive in regards to eroding riverbank issues, the Committee noted that much of the time, the Waikato Regional Council needed to be involved regarding design of appropriate works, funding and having existing resource consent to undertake the work required.

The Committee discussed Plan Change 1 (PC1) and the impact on staffing:

- The Committee was advised that the Council was currently looking at initial resourcing requirements.
- The Committee noted that competent advisory staff/consultants were critical to the implementation of PC1. There was land management training available coming in May/June for advisors in this space.
- Farm plans were critical to the success of the PC1. These would need to be completed by accredited consultants, if consultants were used in the process.
- The Committee requested an email update on how PC1 would be implemented in the Waikato and what the next steps are.

The Committee was advised their feedback on the Long Term Plan would be taken back to full Council and business cases would be presented for consideration in August 2017.

Cr N Smith moved/N Barnett seconded.

**WaipaC17/12**

**THAT** the report "Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update April 2017" (Doc #10271273 dated April 2017) be received for information.

**The motion was put and carried (WaipaC17/12)**

**Waipa Zone Update**

File: 03 02 34 (Agenda Item #5) Doc # 10139903 and 10323380

Presented by Waipa Zone Manager (Grant Blackie) the report provided the Committee with an update on the Waipa Zone activities and work programmes since the last Committee meeting.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following points:

- Erosion control works completed in the catchment in 2016 were holding up well with the main issues being localised slip and river bank erosion, trees and other debris going through fences.
- The Committee discussed the proposed Puniu River Care project.
- It was also noted that the higher levels of grant assistance would be available for farmers with small projects where those properties were within the umbrella of the wider priority sub-catchment project.

Dairy NZ Committee representative (Mike Bramley) provided the Committee with a brief update on the 'Sustainable Milk Plan' project. He advised that 105 plans were completed of the 225 underway. The target was 225, the other 65 were being signed up and worked through. Dairy NZ had not made any decisions regarding where the project will head in the future.

Community Representative (Rosemary Davison) provided the Committee with an update on recent Waipa Rerenoa access issues.

Rachel Barton moved/Neil Barton seconded.

**WaipaC17/13** **THAT** the report 'Waipa Zone – Update' (Doc# 10281197, dated 20 April 2017) be received.

**The motion was put and carried (WaipaC17/13)**

**General Business**

The Committee discussed the potential for representatives from sub-catchment level of the Waipa Catchment. There were concerns that having sub-catchment representatives might see the Committee get too big. The Committee was advised that sub-catchment plans would be considered under PC1 for a number of priority sub-catchments and that they agreed that while having representation from sub-catchment level would be beneficial it would be just as beneficial to have 'points of contact' at those priority sub-catchment levels.

The Committee was advised that this would be Community Representative John Olivers last meeting. John was thanked for his time and commitment to the Committee, his knowledge, background and experience would be missed.

The meeting closed at 12:35pm.




---

## Lower Waikato Catchment Committee OPEN MINUTES

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee held at the Metcalfes, 292 Ginn Road, Huntly on Thursday 18 May 2017 at 10.05am.

---

<b>Chairman</b>	Malcolm Lumsden	
<b>Deputy Chairman</b>	Stuart Muir	
	<b>Members</b>	
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	Cr Jennie Hayman	
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	Andrew Sinclair	Gordon Holdom
	Ian McDougall	
	Keith Holmes	
<b>Chair of Franklin Waikato Drainage Advisory Subcommittee (ex-officio)</b>	Matthew Dean	
<b>Ngati Tamaoho Trust</b>	Hero Potini	
<b>Waahi Whaanui Trust</b>	Taroi Rawiri	
<b>Huakina Development Trust</b>	Rosalie Ellis	
<b>Chair, Integrated Catchment Management Committee (North)</b>	Cr Stuart Husband	
<b>Staff</b>	Adam Munro – Section Manager	
	Michael Duffy – Zone Manager	
	Darion Embling – Team Leader: Biodiversity	
	Dominique Thurlow – Democracy Advisor	

Stuart Muir opened the meeting with a karakia.

## SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)

### Apologies

Agenda Item 1

The Committee received the apologies from Councillor Alan Livingston, Councillor Jacqui Church, Councillor Jan Sedgwick, Glen Tupuhi, Syd Goodwright and VJ Bhana.

### Confirmation of Agenda

Agenda Item 2

The Zone Manager and the Committee requested that the following two items be added to the agenda:

1. Members' Reports.
2. Disaster recovery fund application – Lower Waikato Zone Flood Event.

Cr Husband moved/M Lumsden seconded

LWSc17/13

### RESOLVED

**THAT the agenda for the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee of 18 May 2017, with the inclusion of the following reports:**

- **Members' reports, and**
  - **Disaster Recovery Fund Application – Lower Waikato Zone Flood Event,**
- be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/13)**

### Disclosures of Interest

Agenda Item 3

There were no disclosures of interest.

### Public Forum

Agenda Item 4

The Chair outlined the process for Public Forum.

The following member of the public spoke on the subjects identified below:

<u>Speaker</u>	<u>Topic</u>
Frank Greene	There is angst amongst the community around the differing interpretations of modified and unmodified waterways with Waikato Regional Council, Fish and Game and the Department of Conservation. As a result there major issues for those people who fall outside of drainage districts. Farmers are seeking a clear definition of modified and unmodified drains that everyone understands.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The issue is around other agencies interpretation of what is deemed a modified or unmodified drain, which affects how rules that are applied.
- It was noted that a large number of drains in the Lower Waikato were set up under the Land Drainage Act, which was superseded by the Resource Management Act, which resulted in an increase in costs due to consenting requirements. Under the Land Drainage Act, drains could be cleaned using a 'good practice' approach.

The Chair thanked Mr Greene for taking the time to speak to the Committee.

With the consent of the meeting, and given that the Member's report from Matthew Dean related to Mr Greene's concerns raised in the Public Forum, the Committee agreed to consider the member's report at this time.

## **SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

### **Members' Reports**

Matthew Dean spoke to his report, noting the following:

- Farmers main concern is with water courses deemed natural and modified of which there are thousands in the Waikato. Their concern is not with the need to follow rules and best practice when it comes to carrying out drainage work, but with the sheer volume of work Council's regulatory approach will create, and the difficulty farmers will face knowing who to communicate with and getting a timely decision from an organisation that is likely to be overburdened with work and experiencing high staff turnover. Many farmers believe that for the vast majority of watercourses all that should be necessary is attendance at a short course resulting in the issue of a generic permit with generic common-sense conditions that will not need renewal for a considerable period of time. Many farmers would not have difficulty with there being a checking up process similar to the one in place for shellfish collection and preservation, to keep those whose inclination is to flout the rules.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- Operations Manager (Guy Russell) noted the following:
  - (i) The Resource Management Act differentiates between what is a river or stream and what is an artificial watercourse or drain. Whilst the Resource Management Act has a definition for a river and a stream, it does not have a definition for an artificial watercourse or drain.
  - (ii) The Regional Plan does provide a definition for an artificial watercourse and a drain.
  - (iii) Any interference with a river or stream or modified watercourse requires a resource consent whereas artificial watercourses do not require a resource consent as they are considered an activity to land.
  - (iv) When getting to the bottom of some systems, it can be difficult to determine whether it is river, stream or drain, which is where the issues arises.

Rosalie Ellis arrived at the meeting at 10.21am.

- Members acknowledged the angst amongst the community and on that basis, felt it is was timely for a review of the costly regulatory approach to the Waikato Regional Council's consenting processes pertaining to normal drain cleaning works.

M Dean moved/Cr Husband seconded

LWSc17/14

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee request, on behalf of all farmers and all their drains, an immediate review of Council's application of the Resource Management Act drain cleaning consent process to make it possible for farmers to apply for a generic overarching resource consent.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/14)**

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Minutes of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 31 March 2017**

Agenda Item 5 (Doc # 10182225)

The minutes for the meeting held on 31 March 2017 were taken as read.

K Holmes moved/S Muir seconded

LWSc17/15

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the minutes of the meeting of the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee held on 31 March 2017 and the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting of 13 April 2017 be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/15)**

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

**Issues/Actions from Lower Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting -**

Agenda Item 6 (Doc # 10379900)

The Zone Manager (M Duffy) reported on actions and issues discussed from the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 31 March 2017.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- A member expressed concern that Council is not actively managing the invasive weed Yellow Bristle Grass. Team Leader, Biodiversity (Darion Embling) advised that Yellow Bristle Grass is not deemed a pest plant in the Regional Pest Management Plan; therefore, it is up to individual landowners to take responsibility for this pest plant. Because this plant is not listed in the Regional Pest Management Plan, Council does not have a regulatory framework to impose rules on landowners to remove this pest plant. In this case, Council has taken a non-regulatory approach and is working collaboratively with district councils and Industry to address the issue. Members were of the view, that Yellow Bristle Grass is a problem and needs to be addressed immediately. On this basis, the Committee felt that it was appropriate for Council to review its procedures in a

non-regulatory environment for dealing with invasive species such as koi carp and Yellow Bristle Grass.

M Lumsden moved/I McDougall seconded

LWSc17/16

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Issues/Actions from Lower Waikato Catchment Committee meeting – 31 March 2017' (Doc # 10379900 dated 3 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/16)**

M Lumsden moved/I McDougall seconded

LWSc17/16.1

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT Council review the procedures, in a non-regulatory environment, for dealing with invasive species such as koi carp and yellow bristle grass.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/16.1)**

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Chair and Deputy Chair's Report**

Agenda Item 7 (Doc # 10378486)

The Chair provided a report noting the following:

- He recently met with the Councillors at the Waikare floodgates.
- Lower Waikato Zone Manager, Michael Duffy, has resigned and will be leaving Council at the end of September 2017. The Committee thanked and acknowledged Michael Duffy's contribution to the Lower Waikato Zone.

The Deputy Chair provided a report noting the following:

- Acknowledgement that there are not enough resources to deal with pest plant issues in the Region. In order to make a difference, more resources need to be deployed.
- The topping of the stopbanks by the Holmes Canal in the recent floods are of concern and an issue that requires urgent attention.
- Weed barriers are being trialled for the fish friendly flood pumps.
- Attended a Waikato River Authority meeting, which discussed prioritisation of projects for the clean up of the Waikato River.

M Lumsden moved/S Muir seconded

LWSc17/17

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the Chair and Deputy Chairs' Reports' (Doc # 10378486) dated 3 May 2017 be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/17)**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review Update – May 2017**

Agenda Item 8 (Doc # 10388227)

Principal Advisor (Greg Ryan) provided an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan (LTP), sought feedback on the known issues impacting on activities which require a response from this LTP, and alerted the Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- Members were of the view that there needs to be greater emphasis on the environmental performance outcomes that Council delivers on as part of its services.

K Holmes moved/M Lumsden seconded

LWSc17/18

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update May 2017’ (Doc # 10388227 dated 5 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/18)**

**Lower Waikato Annual Work Programme Update 2016/2017**

Agenda Item 9 (Doc # 10381168)

Zone Manager (M Duffy) outlined the status for Lower Waikato Zone activities and work programmes, covering the period from 1 July 2016 to 30 April 2017, including:

- Damage observed and work undertaken relating to recent high river flows, including performance of the Lower Waikato flood protection assets
- Updated programme expenditure against existing budgets.
- Specific key projects reported (Section 6 of this report).

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- In respect to the Tauhei local flood protection upgrade members were advised that Council recently heard from the submitters to the 2017/18 Draft Annual Plan.
- A member requested that the agenda for the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee contain regular reporting on environmental farm systems.

Cr Hayman moved/I McDougall seconded

LWSc17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Lower Waikato Zone – 2016/17 Annual Work Programme Update May 2017’ (Doc # 10381168 dated 3 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/19)**

Councillor Husband left the meeting at 11.20am.

**Lower Waikato Zone Plan and Asset Management Plan Review Update**

Agenda Item 10 (Doc # 10381183)

The Committee took the progress update on the proposed Lower Waikato Zone Plan review process as read.

M Lumsden moved/K Holmes seconded

LWSc17/20

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Lower Waikato Zone Plan and Asset Management Plan Review Update’ (Doc # 10381183 dated 3 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/20)**

**Lake Waikare Consent 101727 Section 128 Consent Review Process and Lake Waikare and Whangamarino Wetland Catchment Management Plan March 2017 Update**

Agenda Item 11 (Doc # 10379532)

Zone Manager (M Duffy) provided an update the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee on the following:

- Section 128 consent review process.
- Lake Waikare and Whangamarino Wetland Catchment Management Plan.

I McDougall moved/Cr Hayman seconded

LWSc17/21

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Lake Waikare Consent 101727 Section 128 Consent Review Process and Lake Waikare and Whangamarino Wetland Catchment Management Plan Update May 2017 (Doc # 10379532 dated 3 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/21)**

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

**Members’ Reports**

**Keith Holmes**

Mr Holmes attended the Waikato River Authority workshop, which outlined restorative work to be undertaken in the clean up the River. Mr Holmes noted that unless the issue of koi carp is addressed that this pest fish will undermine the restorative work that will be undertaken. Based on this, the Committee were of the view that the Council needs to revisit how it manages this invasive pest.

K Holmes moved/I McDonald seconded

LWSc17/22

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT Council look at introducing the herpes disease from Australia that kills koi carp to eradicate and/or control koi carp and that this matter be addressed through its 2018-2028 Long Term Plan and the Regional Pest Management Plan review.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/22)**

Given the huge demand on machinery in the region, it was noted that it is difficult for operational staff to undertake their roles. As such, it was suggested that Council's Policy of not owning its own machinery should be revisited.

K Holmes moved/I McDougall seconded

LWSc17/22

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT Council look at the options for having their own machinery to assist in the delivery on its work programmes.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/22)**

Matthew Dean

Matthew Dean, as chair of the Franklin Waikato Drainage Subcommittee, tabled a report following the recent storm events (Doc # 10512724).

The Democracy Advisory undertook to circulate the report to members.

Councillor Husband returned to the meeting at 11.45am.

**Additional Matter**

**Disaster Recovery Fund Application – Lower Waikato Zone Flood Event**

As this matter was not on the agenda, the Committee was required to satisfy Standing Order 3.7.5 'An item that is not on the agenda for a meeting may be dealt with at the meeting if-

- (a) The local authority by resolution so decides; and
- (b) The presiding member explains at the meeting at a time when it is open to the public, -
  - (i) The reason why the item is not on the agenda; and
  - (ii) The reason why the discussion of the item cannot be delayed until a subsequent meeting.'

In satisfying the requirements of Standing Order 3.7.5 the Committee agreed for the presentation to be included as part of the agenda and enable a recommendation to be presented for the committee to decide on.

- The Lower Waikato Catchment Committee members agreed that this presentation did satisfy Standing Oder 3.7.5, due to the following reasons:
  - Timing issue, due to staff been involved in local flood response activation, and the length of the flood event, not all information could be captured in time to satisfy writing a report within Council timeframes.

- Furthermore, as the funding needed to be determined before the end of the 2016/17 financial year and the fact that the next meeting of the Committee is not until September 2017, a recommendation was sought.

Section Manager (A Munro) provided an overview of the Regional flood events of March/April and the Lower Waikato Zone Manager (Michael Duffy) provided a summary of the damage caused as a result of multiple flood events in the Lower Waikato sought funding assistance (\$314,000) for subsequent works from the Waikato Regional Council's Disaster Recovery Reserve Fund.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Committee was in support of the use of the Zone Recovery Fund to pay for operational costs totalling \$314,000 incurred as a result of the March/April flood events for both this year and next year as those costs incurred.

I McDougall moved/G Holdom seconded

LWSc17/22

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the Lower Waikato Catchment Committee approve the use of the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to pay for operational costs totalling \$314,000 incurred as a result of the March/April flood events for both this year and next year as those costs are incurred.**

**The motion was put and carried (LWSc17/22)**

The meeting closed at 12.28pm.

---

**West Coast Catchments Committee**  
**OPEN MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the West Coast Catchments Committee held in Waikato Regional Council Chambers on 6 June 2017 at 10:00am

<b>Chair</b>	Rob Jolly
<b>Deputy Chair</b>	Weo Maag
	<b>Present:</b>
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	Cr Fred Lichtwark
<b>Waikato District Council</b>	Cr Lisa Thomson
<b>Otorohanga District Council</b>	Cr Deborah Pilkington
<b>Waitomo District Council</b>	Cr Sue Smith
<b>Department of Conservation</b>	Natasha Hayward
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	Andrea Hanna Rob Jolly Mark Smyth Mike Moss
<b>Te Tokanganui-a-noho</b>	Weo Maag
<b>Maniapoto Maori Trust Board</b>	Ray Wi
<b>Waikato-Tainui</b>	Maxine Moana-Tuwangai
<b>Co-Chairman Integrated Catchment Management Committee</b>	Cr Stu Kneebone
<b>Chairman of Council, or Deputy Chairman of Council</b>	Cr Tipa Mahuta
<b>Waikato Regional Council Staff</b>	Clare Crickett – Director Integrated Catchment Management Jolene Francis – Zone Manager West Coast Greg Ryan – Principal Advisor Integrated Catchment Management Grant Blackie – Zone Manager Integrated Catchment Management Brett Bailey – Team Leader Biosecurity (Pest Animals) Alex Williams – Democracy Advisor

**Apologies**

Apologies were received from:

Tom Mandeno (Community Representative), Kristel van Houte (Community Representative) for non-attendance.

Cr Tipa Mahuta (Waikato Regional Council) and Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai (Waikato Tainui Representative) for lateness.

Accepted

**Confirmation of Agenda**

(Agenda Item 2)

On the advice of the Chair, the Committee agreed to hear item 10 – Myrtle Rust Update first and move item 6 – Appointment of Chair to become the last item.

M Moss moved/R Jolly seconded.

WCCC17/12

**THAT the agenda of the meeting of the West Coast Catchments Committee of 6 June 2017, with the agreed amendments, be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/12)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

(Agenda Item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)****Myrtle Rust Update**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #10) Doc #10549035

Presented by Biosecurity Team Leader (Brett Bailey) the report provided an update to the Committee on the discovery of the fungal disease Myrtle Rust in New Zealand, and the subsequent biosecurity response being led by the Ministry for Primary Industries supported by Iwi, Department of Conservation, Regional Council and other stakeholders. The update was accompanied by a 'Myrtle Rust Stakeholder Update' and a detailed presentation, these will be provided to the Committee with the minutes following the meeting.

Cr Tipa Mahuta arrived at 10:10am

During questions, answers and related discussion the following points were noted:

- A number of infestations had been found in nurseries. Nursery to nursery transport of the infested plants was an issue. Nurseries had been advised by MPI to follow published guidelines, and not sell any Myrtaceous species.
- Myrtle Rust is wind borne so stopping the spread was difficult. DNA testing was being done between regions to see if Myrtle Rust infestations were related.
- If Myrtle Rust was suspected, people were asked to contact MPI Exotic Pest and Disease Hotline immediately. Once it had been identified, the property would be on lock down with no plants, machinery or vehicles entering or leaving until a response

plan had been implemented including anti-fungal spray being applied to the property.

A member raised concern about the level of control currently being undertaken by MPI in regards to the Myrtle Rust infestation. There was a suggestion that all 'inter-nursery', and inter-zone transport of plants be ceased until the infestation was under control. The Committee agreed this would be hard to control especially as the infestation could be spread via wind.

Discussion ensued about how the Committee could inform the public about the issue, and stop plant transportation between the zones. Cr Fred Lichtwark moved a motion that the West Coast Catchments Committee recommend to Council, via Integrated Catchment Management Committee to advise the public and make a request to the public by way of a Media release not to bring Myrtle Species of plants into the West Coast zone until the outbreak is controlled.

The Committee proceeded to discuss this and were advised that there was potential for confusion if the Council and MPI's advice were conflicted. There were factsheets that were available that outlined the approach that MPI was taking. The Committee was advised that there was still knowledge to be gained about this infestation as it was the first time New Zealand had dealt with this issue. The majority of the Committee agreed that there was a duty to advise the public.

Cr F Lichtwark moved/Cr L Thomson seconded

WCCC17/13

**RESOLVED**

**THAT** the report named 'Myrtle Rust Update' (Doc #10549035, dated 25 May 2017) be received for information; and

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT** the West Coast Catchments Committee recommends to Council, via ICM to advise the public; and make a request to the public by way of a media release not to bring any Myrtle species of plants into the West Coast Zone until the outbreak is controlled.

**The motion was put and carried (WCCC17/13)**

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF INTEGRATED CATCHMENT MANAGEMENT COMMITTEE)**

**Minutes of Previous Meeting**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #4) Doc #10046995 and 10444474

The Committee was provided with the minutes of the previous West Coast Catchments Committee meeting of 8 March 2017, and an extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting of 13 April 2017.

There was no further discussion on this item.

Cr D Pilkington moved/W Maag seconded.

WCCC17/14

1. **THAT the Minutes of the West Coast Catchments Committee meeting of 8 March 2017 be received and approved as a true and correct record.**
2. **THAT the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee of 13 April 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/14)**

### **Chairman's Report May 2017**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item 5) Doc #10401946

Committee Chair (Rob Jolly) provided the Committee with a verbal report summarising the recent workshop and updates on issues of significance or matters of relevance to the West Coast Zone.

Rob thanked the Committee for their continued support in his Chairing duties. He thanked and acknowledged the work that the zone staff do on the ground. Rob noted that there had been times, in meetings, where staff were not available when specific questions were asked, often leaving available staff unable to answer questions. Rob suggested that to avoid this, any specific concerns/questions should be sent to the Chair prior to the meeting to add to the agenda and this would ensure that correct staff were available to answer questions as they arose.

Rob noted that the 24 April 2017 Hill Country Erosion Funding (HCEF) workshop was effective for the decision making progress given the time frame for getting advice to Council. He raised concern about a Councillor's behaviour at the workshop and noted that the Committee was established to inform and assist Council, with Councillors providing a leadership role in this forum.

Further, Rob raised concerns about the Councillor's conduct when it came to media releases attacking the Committee's work. He suggested that the Waikato Regional Council Chair was made aware and spoke to Councillors about what is appropriate conduct in regards to media releases.

Finally – Rob noted that attending the Integrated Catchment Management meetings as Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee had made him aware of how lucky the West Coast Zone was. They had not had to deal with stop banks or flood pumps and could concentrate on Catchment restoration work including fencing, riparian planting and education.

The Committee thanked Rob for his leadership, work and effort for the Committee.

Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai arrived at 10:30am

During questions, answers and related discussion the following points were noted:

- Concerns were raised by a Committee member that action taken by the Councillor in regards to media releases might have breached the Councillor Code of Conduct. It was suggested that – along with notifying the Regional Council Chair – Councillors should note in media releases when it was their personal opinion.
- A member noted that Councillors needed to be supportive of staff and works in all areas of the Region, as opposed to just their own.
- Concerns were raised by the Councillor that the Committee was over-represented by those in the farming industry in the zone and this meant that conflicts arose when voting on motions that affected farming in the area. Others on the Committee noted however that the West Coast Zone was predominantly a rural zone.
- The Committee was reminded that the Zone Committees were advisory and decisions made in this forum go to full Council for decision making. Council could chose to endorse all or part of a decision. Zone Committee's advice was valued to Council decision making as it included the views of people in the zone, with

knowledge of the area. Councillors appreciated, and trusted that the work would continue.

Cr Sue Smith moved/Mike Moss seconded.

**WCCC17/15** **THAT** the verbal report named 'Chairman's Report May 2017' (Doc #10401946 dated 10 May 2017) be received.

**The motion was put and carried (WCCC17/15)**

**West Coast Zone - Update**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #7) Doc #10387901

West Coast Zone Manager (Jolene Francis) provided the Committee with a presentation that updated the Committee on West Coast Zone activities and work programmes since the last Committee meeting. This included:

- Summary of recently completed and ongoing projects within the zone
- Observations and work undertaken relating to recent high river flows.
- Freshwater Improvement Fund applications for the zone.
- Updated programme expenditure against existing budgets.

During questions, answers and related discussion the following points were noted,

- The Committee requested a further breakdown in regards to priority funding: projected annual expenditure separated from total expenditure.
- In regards to the Marokopa River riverbank stabilisation works – the Committee queried what the make-up of geotextile was and if it included plastic. The Committee was advised that it was a fine weave with coconut matter that allowed planted 'shrub willows' to grow through stabilising the bank. There was fabric that would become part of the soil eventually.
- The Committee was advised of two applications to the Freshwater Management Fund which, if successful, would add funding support to the Toreparu wetland restoration, and further investment in the Hill Country Erosion Project. Some Committee members were unsure as to the benefits of increasing the incentive funding further, and would require more discussion if the application was successful.

M Moana-Tuwhangai moved/Cr L Thomson seconded.

**WCCC17/16** **THAT** the report 'West Coast Zone – Update' (Doc #10387901, dated 5 May 2017) be received.

**The motion was put and carried (WCCC17/16)**

Due to availability of staff, the Committee agreed to bring on item 9 "Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update April 2017".

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update April 2017**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #9) Doc #10362739

Presented by Principal Advisor (Greg Ryan) the report provided the Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan (LTP). Further, the report sought feedback from the Committee on the known issues impacting on activities which require a response from this LTP, and altered the Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee the following points were noted:

- Business cases would be provided to Council for discussion in August. Zone budgets would be available for consideration by November.
- The Committee agreed that it was important for work to be prioritised and understood that priorities could change.
- A member raised concerns about the apparent disconnect between District and Regional councils regarding roading issues following a weather event. There appears to be a delay with District Councils fixing of roading issues, when river management interventions in the Catchment were required. Staff advised that meetings with Waitomo and Waikato District Council, and Waikato Regional Council staff were taking place to establish an effective and responsive relationship.
- In terms of the West Coast Zone, emerging pests and threats would be considered in the Regional Pest Management Plan that was up for review this year.
- The Committee queried whether the Long Term Plan budgeted enough resources to meet the demands of beach care groups. Staff advised that currently these demands were beyond the resources available, and Councillors would need to make a call on the level of support to service this community demand.

Chair (Rob Jolly) thanked Greg for his time on this item.

W Maag moved/Cr F Lichtwark seconded.

**WCCC17/17** **THAT** the report 'Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review update May 2017' (Doc #10362739, dated 3 May 2017) be received for information.

**The motion was put and carried (WCCC17/17)**

## **SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

### **HCEF Funding: Workshop Recommendation**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #8) Doc #10402033

This report provided the West Coast Catchments Committee with an overview of the workshop held 24 April 2017 to discuss funding options for the Hill Country Erosion Fund project.

The report was taken as read. During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee the following points were noted:

- Waitomo District Council had been advised of the rate increase, and were supportive.
- A member questioned whether the Committee was aware of the repercussions of the funding requirements for the HCEF project. Concern was raised that correct protocol and procedure was not followed. The member noted that a resolution was made by the West Coast Catchments Committee in 2011. This was not actioned until 2013 when the zone met the criteria for the funding, then an application was processed. In response, the member was advised that it was unlikely for these multi-year funding applications to be reconsidered by Committee's annually unless an issue cropped up that needed to be dealt with. The Committee was kept up to date following the initial resolution and in December 2017 a zone newsletter was released that outlined the HCEF.
- The Committee acknowledged that the funding process for the hill country programme, including utilisation of the reserve, could have been managed better and this would be a learning going forward.

- In terms of the perceived conflict of interest outlined by a Committee member in regards to the vote taken at the HCEF workshop, the Committee was advised that full Council had noted the workshop recommendation and was comfortable making its decision accordingly.

Cr F Lichtwark moved/W Maag seconded.

**WCCC17/18** **THAT** the report 'HCEF Funding: Workshop Recommendation' (Doc #10402033, dated 10 May 2017) be received.

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/18)**

Members suggested that while the HCEF recommendation was discussed at an informal workshop level, the decision could be ratified by a formal recommendation to Council noting the Committee's support.

M Moana-Tuwhangai moved/Cr S Kneebone seconded

**WCCC17/19** **RECOMMENDED**  
**THAT** the West Coast Catchment Committee endorse the recommendation that arose from the 24 April 2017 committee workshop to support the 52% targeted rate increase for the 2017/2018 Annual Plan

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/19)**

**Cr F Lichtwark and M Moss opposed**  
**M Smythe abstained**

**Appointment of Chair, West Coast Catchments Committee**

File: 03 02 38 (Agenda Item #6) Doc #10425025

Presented by Director for Integrated Catchment Management (Clare Crickett) the report sought a recommendation for the appointment of Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee.

Chair (Rob Jolly) called for nominations for Chair.

- Mike Moss nominated Weo Maag, this nomination was seconded by Cr Fred Lichtwark.
- Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai nominated Mark Smythe. Mark Smythe declined the nomination.

No further nominations were received and Weo Maag was declared Chair pending Integrated Catchment Management Committee's adoption.

M Moss moved/Cr F Lichtwark seconded.

**WCCC17/20**

1. **THAT** the report 'Appointment of Chair, West Coast Catchments Committee' (Doc #10425025, dated 15 May 2017) be received, and
2. **RECOMMEND** that Weo Maag be appointed as Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/20)**

As Weo Maag was Deputy Chair of the Committee, his nomination as Chair left a vacancy for Deputy Chair.

Chair (Rob Jolly) called for nomination for Deputy Chair of the Committee.

- Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai nominated Mark Smythe, Cr Lisa Thomson seconded the motion.

No further nominations were received and Mark Smythe was declared Deputy Chair of the Committee pending Integrated Catchment Management's adoption.

M Moana-Tuwhangi moved/Cr Lisa Thomson seconded

**WCCC17/21**

3. **RECOMMEND** that Mark Smythe be appointed as Deputy Chair of the West Coast Catchments Committee

**The motion was put and carried (wccc17/21)**

**Items requested for the next meeting agenda**

- HCEF application update, and distribution discussion
- Harbour Catchment Management Plans and their equitability with the West Coast.

Meeting closed at 12:44pm

Doc #10571377

---

**Central Waikato Catchment Committee**  
**OPEN MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee held in the Karapiro Room, Sir Don Rowlands Centre, Mighty River Domain, 601 Maungatautari Road, Karapiro on Wednesday 31 May 2017 at 11.09 am.

**Chairman**  
**Deputy Chair**

**Present:**  
Maxine Moana-Tuwhangai (local community representative)  
Dr Brendan Hicks (local community representative)

**Waikato Regional Council**  
**Hamilton City Council**

**Mercury**  
**Local Community representatives**

**Members**  
Cr Barry Quayle  
Cr Paula Southgate  
Bridget Morgan  
Dale Arbury  
Sue Edmonds  
Dr Doug Wright

**Iwi Representation – Waikato Tainui**  
**Ngati Koroki Kahukura**

Poto Davies (until 12.32 pm)

**Chair, Integrated Catchment**  
**Management Committee (South)**

Cr Stu Kneebone

**In Attendance:**

**Waikato Regional Council**  
**Mercury**

Cr Kataraina Hodge  
David Payne (Principal Hydrologist)

**Staff**

Clare Crickett – (WRC) Director Integrated Catchment Management  
Grant Blackie – (WRC) representing Manager Lower Waikato/Waipā/West Coast Catchments  
Michelle Archer – (WRC) Zone Manager Central Waikato  
Greg Ryan – Principal Advisor Integrated Catchment Management  
Jenny Robertson – (WRC) Acting Democracy Advisor

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**Welcome

The Chair welcomed Cr Barry Quayle as a new member, Bridget Morgan as alternate member for Hamilton City Council, and introduced Grant Blackie who was representing Catchment Manager Matthew Davis.

Apologies

(Agenda Item 1)

Cr Rob McGuire, Cr Alan Livingston, Cr Tipa Mahuta, Poto Davies (for early departure).

Confirmation of Agenda

(Agenda Item 2)

The Chair proposed that the agenda include an opportunity for members to provide reports.

B Hicks moved/D Wright seconded

CWCC17/12

**THAT the agenda for the meeting of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee of 31 May 2017, as circulated, with an additional item "Members' Reports" be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/12)**

Disclosures of Interest

(Agenda Item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

Minutes of Previous Meeting

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 4) Doc # 10133525

The minutes of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 23 March 2017 would be updated on Page 5 to correct Dr D Edmonds to Dr D Wright.

Cr S Kneebone moved/P Davies seconded

CWCC17/13

**THAT the Minutes of the Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting of 23 March 2017 be received and with correction to read Dr D Wright on Page 5 be approved as a true and correct record.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/13)**

D Arbury moved/Cr B Quayle seconded

CWCC17/13.1

**THAT the extract from the Minutes of the Council Meeting of 27 April 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/13.1)**

**Issues/Actions from Central Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting 23 March 2017**

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 5) Doc # 10029232

The Zone Manager Central Waikato (M Archer) reported on actions and issues discussed at the previous Central Waikato Catchment Committee meeting held on 23 March 2017.

During questions, answers and related discussion Committee members noted the following points:

- The Zone Manager advised that the proposal for an online meta database was to be reviewed by the Science and Strategy Directorate of Waikato Regional Council, with another web page to be considered.
- The Zone Manager would discuss with the Communications team the new social media strategy and the best way to profile Committee members.
- S Edmonds and the Zone Manager had attended the Investment Framework for Environmental Resources (INFER) workshop held at Hopuhopu on 17 May 2017, which had worked through prioritisation of projects in the catchment. Approximately 60 projects had been prioritised.
- The restoration strategy will provide guidance for Waikato Regional Council and other parties to assist in best delivering on the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.
- The Central Waikato Stability Strategy is a collaborative project between Hamilton City, Waikato District, Waipa District, Tainui and Mercury. Among other things it considers vegetation management on the banks of the river, including retention of trees that stabilise the bank.
- Community projects such as removal of overgrown tradescantia required ongoing involvement from local residents. In areas like Hammond Bush there was an engaged community group whilst there was less input in areas such as Donny Park which had a high percentage of Housing New Zealand Corporation and rental accommodation on the gully boundaries.
- NIWA's project to provide improved fish passage is difficult to monitor in areas where there is tradescantia overgrowth.
- An update on the meta database and the restoration strategy would be provided at the Committee's next meeting.

P Davies moved/B Hicks seconded

CWCC17/14

**THAT the report "Issues/Actions from Central Waikato Catchment Committee Meeting 23 March 2017" (Doc # 10372830, dated 19 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/14)**

**Central Waikato Committee Chair Report – Verbal Update**

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 6) Doc # 10416184

The report from the Chair (M Moana-Tuwhangai) noted:

- The Integrated Catchment Management Committee had discussed issues raised by this Committee.
- That meeting had also discussed the recent high rainfall events. The Waikato Regional Council had worked closely with Mercury to manage the impacts of that rainfall.

During questions, answers and related discussion Committee members noted the following points:

- The Regional Pest Management Plan was being reviewed, as the plan was currently inconsistent with the new National Policy Statement requirements. Most of the Regional Councils would be going through a similar process. The Director Integrated Catchment Management (C Crickett) advised that the review was technical in nature and would include agreement on a list of pests and funding.
- Agendas and minutes for all eight Catchment Committee meetings and the Integrated Catchment Committee were available on the Waikato Regional Council's website. Each zone had unique challenges and the Committee's shared knowledge and wisdom should be focussed on the zone's issues to support Council.

B Hicks moved/D Arbury seconded

**CWCC17/15** **THAT the report "Central Waikato Committee Chair Report – Verbal Update"** (Doc #10416184, dated 19 May 2017) **be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/15)**

#### **Zone Manager Update – Verbal Update**

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 7) Doc # 10479217

Presented by Zone Manager Central Waikato (M Archer), this report provided an update on works in the Central Waikato Zone since the last meeting and provided details on the recent flood events in the Waikato Region. A presentation was provided (Doc # 10618431).

During questions, answers and related discussion Committee members noted the following points:

- The Central Waikato zone operating reserve is forecast to have a balance of \$2.4 million at 30 June 2017. Although a significant call on those reserves could be made in responding to a flooding event/riverbank erosion, Council considered that the reserves were becoming too high. In light of this favourable financial position, funding the service level agreement for river management works that are undertaken through a contract with Hamilton City Council, will draw down on the accumulated reserve funds. It is proposed that 50 per cent of the 2017/18 funding is met through a drawdown on the accumulated reserve funds, with a corresponding reduction in the rate revenue requirement of \$208,000. This drawdown will occur for only one year and will return to the previous value in 2018/19.
- The Zone Manager is working closely with Hamilton City Council to ensure delivery on expectations.
- The Zone Manager has been liaising with Hamilton City Council and Waikato District Council regarding erosion on the Te Awa O Katapaki Stream adjacent to the Horsham Downs golf course. The stream is on the boundary between Hamilton City and Waikato District and remediation options are currently being worked through. A portion of the zone's reserves might be required to assist in fixing the issue. A report would be provided to the next meeting.
- A report on stormwater, including high intensity rainfall runoff from new developments, would be provided to a future meeting. For new subdivision areas, for example Peacockes and Rotokauri, it is important to include consideration of the stormwater impacts during planning for those developments.

- Consideration of drainage issues was included within agendas and minutes for Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meetings and those documents were available on the Council's website.

Cr S Kneebone moved/S Edmonds seconded

CWCC17/16

**THAT That the report "Zone Manager Update – Verbal Update"** (Doc #10479217 dated 19 May 2017) **be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/16)**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review**

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 8) Doc # 10367612

Presented by Principal Advisor Integrated Catchment Management (G Ryan), this report provided the Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan. The report sought feedback from the Committee on the known issues impacting activities that required a response from the plan, and alerted the Committee to other issues that might require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion Committee members noted the following points:

- Although wallaby populations were not an issue for this zone, they were a major issue for the eastern part of the region and had resulted in a pest management plan that had been developed in consultation with other agencies. Although the wallabies had been present for decades, they were hard to locate and the population was a challenge to control.
- Hamilton City is also undertaking its Long Term Plan and there should be conversations about alignment. There were a number of activities in the city that would impact on the role of this Committee, for example, the River Plan and pest management, particularly control of rats.
- Each year the Waikato River Authority released a funding strategy in which they identified priority areas such as the Waipa and Lower Waikato. Lake Rotoroa was included in that strategy for 2017.
- Issues within the water, such as pest fish, should be included within priorities. The Long Term Plan did not currently include much about aquatic habitats.
- The Zone Plan review would lead into development of the following Long Term Plan.

Cr B Quayle moved/D Wright seconded

CWCC17/17

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report "Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review"** (Doc #10367612 dated 1 May 2017) **be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/17)**

**Mercury Flood Management Presentation – Verbal Update**

File: 03 02 33 (Agenda Item 9) Doc # 10479541

Presented by David Payne (Principal Hydrologist, Mercury) this report provided a presentation to the Central Waikato Catchment Committee on the recent floods resulting from Cyclone Debbie and Cyclone Cook, and outlined Mercury's management of high flows through the dams during these events.

A presentation was provided (Doc # 10604258) and the report noted:

- A High Flow Management Plan had been produced in 2008 to document how Mercury would manage flood events. They worked closely with Waikato Regional Council, with each organisation having specific objectives and responsibilities. The plan included communication protocols with Waikato Regional Council and stakeholders.
- Lake Taupo's maximum control level was not exceeded during the recent rainfall events. Mercury and Waikato Regional Council agreed to hold water in Taupo during the event to reduce the impacts of additional flow in the Waikato River due to substantial inflows to the River from tributaries downstream of Lake Taupo.
- 300 m<sup>3</sup>/s is the maximum flow that can be released out of Lake Taupo, so when inflows from the lake's tributaries are more than 300 m<sup>3</sup>/s the lake level rises. The maximum outflow of 300 m<sup>3</sup>/s reduces the level of Lake Taupo by only a couple of inches a day, so a significant reduction in the lake level would take a long time to achieve.
- Following direction from Waikato Regional Council, Mercury had increased the flow from Karapiro to a maximum of 600 m<sup>3</sup>/s. This is to clear water through the system as fast as possible while minimising impacts on the Lower River. Data revealed that the natural river flow without hydro control would have been 825 m<sup>3</sup>/s through Hamilton.
- The Waipa River catchment had not received as much rain as the hydro system catchments, resulting in less impact at Ngaruawahia and the Lower Waikato.
- The second weather system, Cyclone Cook, was not as bad as predicted.

Poto Davies out of meeting at 12.32 pm.

During questions, answers and related discussion Committee members noted the following points:

- In major flood events the Waipa River was a big contributor to flood flows beyond Ngaruawahia. Careful coordination of the Waikato River hydro system allowed flows to be managed in such a way to avoid the flood peaks meeting at Ngaruawahia. This results in the Lower Waikato River having elevated levels for longer, but ensures that the flood peak is lower to reduce damage.
- The Tongariro Power Scheme (operated by Genesis Energy), adds 20% more water into the Waikato River system by intercepting water from three other catchments. During normal operations this can be up to 30 m<sup>3</sup>/s additional water added to the Waikato Catchment. It was noted that during a flood the water from these intakes is not brought into the Waikato Catchment.

B Hicks moved/S Edmonds seconded

CWCC17/18

**THAT the report "Mercury Flood Management presentation – Verbal Update" (Doc #10479541, dated 19 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CWCC17/18)**

As agreed earlier in the meeting, the additional item “Members’ Reports” was included at this time.

### **Members’ Reports**

This item provided members with an opportunity to update the Committee on matters of interest for the Committee.

- D Wright – noted an article in the *Waikato Times* of Saturday 27 May 2017 regarding a book by Dave Hansford entitled *Protecting Paradise: 1080 and the Fight to Save New Zealand’s Wildlife* that dissected anti-1080 sentiment and answered claims.
- S Edmonds – noted that a meeting was to be held in Morrinsville to discuss the enhancement of the Piako River; Moira Cursey of the Waikato Biodiversity Forum would be moving to Whitianga and would be a great loss to that community group; Professor Bruce Clarkson had put out a planting guide that could be of use to community groups.
- Cr P Southgate – noted that Professor Clarkson had been awarded a Royal Society medal and the Waikato Regional Council might wish to send him a letter of congratulation; a planting day would be held at Waiwhakareke on Friday 2 June to celebrate Arbor Day.

The meeting closed at 12.45 pm.

---

**Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee**  
**OPEN MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee held in Diprose Miller Boardroom, 53-61 Whitaker Street, Te Aroha on Friday 26 May 2017 at 10.01 am.

	<b>Present:</b>	
<b>Chairman</b>	Robert Hicks	
<b>Deputy Chair</b>	Conall Buchanan	
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	Cr Hugh Vercoe	
<b>Hauraki District Council</b>	Cr Phillip Buckthought	
<b>Matamata District Council</b>	Cr Donna Arnold	
<b>South Waikato District Council</b>	Cr Herman van Rooijen	
<b>Thames Coromandel District Council</b>	Mayor Sandra Goudie	
<b>Dairy NZ</b>	Tom Stephens	
<b>Local Community representatives</b>	Gary Dalton	John Bubb
	Andrew McGiven	Roger Hunter
<b>Chair of Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee</b>	Anthony Arnet	
<b>Chair, Integrated Catchment Management Committee (North)</b>	Cr Stu Husband	
<b>Chairman or Deputy Chair of Council (Ex Officio)</b>	Cr Alan Livingston	
<b>Staff</b>	<b>In Attendance:</b>	
	Clare Crickett – Director Integrated Catchment Management	
	Greg Ryan – Principal Advisor	
	Adam Munro – Manager Hauraki/Coromandel	
	Karen Botting – Zone Manager Hauraki	
	Kenny Growden – Operations Team Leader	
	Paul Quinn – Biosecurity Officer	
	Jennie Cox – Democracy Advisor	

**Apologies**

Jessica Samuels - **Community Representative**  
 Andrew McGiven - **Community Representative**  
 Pauline Clarkin – **Kaimai Catchment Forum**  
 Rangitonga Kaukau – **Ngati Haua**  
 Grant Kettle – **Raukawa**

Cr H van Rooijen/ Cr Buckthought seconded

WPCC17/16 **THAT the apologies as noted be accepted.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/16)**

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)****Confirmation of Agenda**

(Agenda Item 2)

J Bubb moved/Cr Vercoe seconded.

WPCC17/17 **THAT the agenda of the meeting of the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee of 26 May 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/17)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

(Agenda Item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Minutes of Previous Meeting**

File: 03 02 37 (Agenda Item #4) Doc #10096752

Matters arising from the Minutes:

- A member noted that the agenda contained a quorum of two and expressed concern that the quorum was so low. It was provided that as a subcommittee this was a standard quorum adopted with Model Standing Orders, but could be reviewed by the Committee and Council to increase the quorum. This may be done through the review of the committees that was ongoing. It was provided that the decision to hold a meeting was done so on discussion with staff and the Chair and dates were reviewed to ensure as many members were able to attend, and that meetings would be postponed or reviewed if only the minimum quorum of two were to attend.
- The landowner at Komata was aware of the proposal and staff advised that further community consultation would occur once the landowner had returned from overseas.
- The cycleway MOU had been signed between Hauraki District Council and Waikato Regional Council and within the MOU there were maintenance management agreements that would be put in place should work be required or the trail to be

closed. Staff worked together closely at an operational level and once the trail was officially opened the agreement would be clear. Staff undertook to work with the relevant councillors and discuss the MOU further.

*A Arnet in the meeting from 10.10am*

R Hunter moved/J Bubb seconded.

WPCC17/18

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the Minutes of the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee meeting of 17 March 2017 be received and approved as a true and correct record.**

**THAT the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting on 13 April 2017 and Council 27 April 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/18)**

**Public Forum**

File: 03 02 37 (Agenda Item #5) Doc #

A period of up to 30 minutes where individual members of the public may speak for up to three minutes on items relevant to the Terms of Reference for Waihou Piako Catchment Committee.

There were no matters under Public Forum.

**Issues/Actions from the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee meeting 17 March 2017**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #6) Doc #10391424

The report provided an update on actions and issues discussed from the previous Waihou Piako Catchment Committee meeting held on 17 March 2017. The report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to by the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

*Cr Livingston out of meeting 10.20am.*

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- A member noted the reference to the removal of the old Kopu Bridge and enquired what was happening with regard to the discussions around the bridge. It was noted that Thames Coromandel District Council were in support of the removal of the bridge and upcycling of the materials. It was provided there was a need for the investigation around the hydrological impact to the river of the old bridge remaining and whether there was an impact on the silt build up within that area. There was to be further communication with the relevant parties around the bridge as more information came to light.
- A member provided that the Waikato Plan should be shared with members of the Committee as the Plan would have aspects for the Committee to be aware of when working towards the Long Term Plan discussions scheduled for August. Staff undertook to share the link to the Waikato Plan website and draft plan to the members following the meeting.

R Hunter moved/Cr van Rooijen seconded.

**WPCC17/19 That the report Issues/Actions from Waihou Piako Catchment Committee Meetings (Doc # 10391424 dated 8 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/19)**

**Chair's Report for 26th May 2017 meeting**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #7) Doc #10441142

Presented by the Chair, the committee were provided an update on catchment related activities since the last meeting.

Cr Livingston in the meeting at 10.35am

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- The Chair and deputy Chair were invited to attend the Source to Sea workshop where they were able to provide input and provide a different view to the organisers. As a workshop it provided everyone with an opportunity to provide input and have free and frank discussion. The discussion focussed on biodiversity and planning going forward. Staff undertook to provide members with the outcome of the workshop.
- The Chair noted that other catchment committees provided space within their agendas for written members' reports and sought opinion from the Committee as to whether they would like a similar process for the Waihou Piako. Members noted that with a written report the information could be out of date by the time the meeting happened and noted their preference for holding a verbal discussion within the meeting.
- The staff were thanked for their response and communication through the recent weather events and it was noted the zone was lucky to have the staff working with such passion for their roles.
- The recent weather events had highlighted the lack of telemetry data within the hills of the Waitoa area. The total catchment was being reviewed to provide information from the events to highlight where the water has come from and to make a plan for it. The issues would be further discussed within the flood report later in the agenda.

R Hicks moved/Mayor Goudie seconded.

**WPCC17/20 THAT the report "Chair's Report for 26th May 2017 meeting" (Doc #10441142, dated 26th May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/20)**

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

**Waihou Piako Flood Event March April 2017 - Disaster Recovery Funding**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #8) Doc #10439901

The report provided a summary of the damage caused as a result of multiple flood events in the Waihou Piako zone during March and April and sought a transfer of funds from the Waikato Regional Council's Disaster Recovery Reserve for subsequent recovery works. The

report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to by the Area Manager (A Munro) and the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- The Council's Disaster Recover Reserve policy provided for events in excess of 20-50 years. It was noted that the events for the Piako were recorded in excess of 50 year levels. The committee noted that work that needed to be undertaken to reinstate the scheme to the position it was before the flood events.
- The fund was maintained through a 1% contribution of the targeted rate revenue each year.
- The Piako cross section survey had been completed prior to the flood events and it was now appropriate to review the survey to understand the impact of the events on the flow and the river.
- Conversations were ongoing with landowners who had private stopbanks. Consideration would be given to a transfer of the assets to Council by the landowners.
- It was provided to staff that the level of the river at Tirohia was the lowest it had been in a long time however it was high in Te Aroha. This would be reviewed within the cross section survey of the Waihou River to understand the flood flows. It was proposed that vegetation and willows may have impacted on the flows of the river.
- Staff were in ongoing discussion with NZTA over any proposed changes for the Criterion Bridge. It was provided that if there were to be changes or a replacement of the bridge Council may not need to fund a replacement of the automatic gates for the area. It was noted that at the May meeting of the Regional Transport Committee NZTA had highlighted concern with the traffic flow and the intersection with SH2 would be a focus. Staff undertook to engage further with NZTA through the Chair of the Regional Transport Committee to provide future priorities for the area.

C Buchanan moved/Mayor Goudie seconded

WPCC17/21

**THAT Waihou Piako Catchment Committee supports discussion taking place with NZTA over future of Criterion bridge and the future of flood protection of their asset considering the significant investment Council makes to the flood protection.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/21)**

- Member C Buchanan declared an interest in that he was a landowner in the area of concern – T-head pump area. The pump works around the clock, 24/7, 365 days. The pump was a drainage pump and not a flood pump. It was acknowledged that there was no staff concern with the running of the pump and that there was merit in a maintenance review.
- It was provided that for all pump stations there were contingency plans in place in that if one failed there were mobile pumps that could be installed temporarily and diesel generators as back up in case of power failure.
- Staff were in discussion with DOC over the Kopuatai peat dome and the impact of the flood event on the area. The discussions would feed in to the Piako Scheme review that staff were undertaking to understand water flow and impacts for the area.

Mayor Goudie moved/R Hunter seconded.

WPCC17/22

**RESOLVED**

1. THAT this report 'Waihou Piako Flood Event March April 2017 - Disaster Recovery Funding' (Doc# 10439901) dated 10 May 2017 be received.

**RECOMMENDED**

2. THAT the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request that Council transfer \$264,112 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Waihou Zone Reserve to fund the March and April 2017 storm damage recovery works within the Waihou Zone.
3. THAT the Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request that Council transfer \$232,354 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Piako Zone Reserve to fund the March and April 2017 storm damage recovery works within the Piako Zone.

The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/22)

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #9) Doc #10401160

The report provided the Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan. The report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to by the Principal Advisor (Greg Ryan)

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- With regard to the Seachange report fish passage was provided for in the statement:  
*Part Three: Ridge to Reef or Mountains to Sea*  
*Management actions for Theme C – Restored species diversity and abundance*  
*Diadromous fishes (including Whitebait and Eels)*  
*17. Ensure all new structures affecting freshwater systems provide for fish passage where possible (recognising that this may not be practical in tidal areas or for flood control structures).*
- It was noted that this statement was important for the Waihou Piako Zone as it recognised that the fish friendly gates and passages that had been installed and subsequently failed in other parts of the zone, may not be a practical use of resources for the zone. It was noted that the document was a non-statutory document, but the information contained within it would be used to inform other plans for the area.
- Further resources were sought to complete the analysis of the cross section surveys. There was insufficient resourcing to complete these while completing the Business As Usual tasks.
- It was provided that the increasing cost of the multi-year multiple area consents was impacting on the work on the ground. The impacts were related to the extra environmental considerations required under the consents and the ongoing reporting required. The costs did not relate specifically to the consenting process.
- It was provided that the report was designed to provide direction for staff to return to the Committee with more detail on aspects that the Committee required further information on.

- The benefits of maintaining the biodiversity in the zone were noted to be beyond the rural areas and that the rating for this should be reflected across the zone.
- Members provided a clear view for Option A on Page 42.
- It was proposed that in order to qualify an increase in rates it be provided to the Community that if they wanted the higher levels of service then there would be a funding implication and they would have to pay for those levels.
- There is a targeted rate that provides input to the flood protection schemes but it was recognised by the committee that there was benefit to the general rate payer.
- Page 43 – Option A provided for community consultation with Hauraki District Council and the Kaiaua community. The Committee agreed with the proposed option.
- A member noted that Kaiaua had organised themselves to work together and provide opportunities for funding to each of the catchments. The Catchment leaders would have a communication line with Waikato Regional Council and Hauraki District Council. The Councils were open to working with the community to provide for long term solutions. It was noted that with recent weather events the community had sought assistance and Council were only able to provide advice.
- Page 44 highlighted to members that there would be a likely funding review following Treaty of Waitangi settlements that would impact on the way that flood protection, river management and land drainage activities were delivered.

*Cr Husband out of the meeting 12.00pm*

- There would be a business case on catchment new works coming back to the committee at the next meeting on 25 August 2017.
- It was noted that the segregation of activities was important and that if new works were related to flood protection there would be no issue for the members but if they related to mitigating on farm activities then that was not related and as such should not be funded from the zone flood protection fund. It was provided that the gains to be maintained were from a catchment rate and not a flood protection rate.
- It was provided that there needed to be an improvement on the 30% of people as surveyed (reference Page 45).
- With respect to the control of wallabies particularly it was noted that the funding available for control was limited. There was a joint agreement between neighbouring regional councils in tackling the pest and it was necessary to meet that commitment. There was not sufficient funds within the current budget to achieve the aim of the Regional Pest Management Plan.
- Members noted with respect to Kauri dieback that Option B was preferred.
- A member proposed that in general they were in support of protecting the environment and doing the environmental work as that helped with flood protection and soil retention. The committee noted their support of this opinion.

Cr van Rooijen moved/Cr Arnold seconded.

WPCC17/23

**THAT the report “Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review” (Doc #10401160 dated 9 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/23)**

**Waihou Piako Status Report**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #10) Doc #10392027

The report provided a summary year to date report, outlining the status of the Waihou Piako Zone activities and work programmes as at 30 April 2017 for the 2016/17 year. The report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to by the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- It was provided that the draft plan had been put on hold due to the March and April flood events and the Committee would receive the draft at the August meeting.
- A member sought the cost to date for the digester and what the achievements had been. It was provided that the digester had been installed at this stage for proof of concept.
- NIWA has recorded a 1.7mm rise per year in sea level which included within the Firth of Thames.

The Committee were provided with a verbal update on the presence of myrtle rust in the region.

- A pathway management plan was in place by MPI for impact on the spread of myrtle rust, but there was no clear certification or management in place for nurseries. It was provided that it had only be found within nurseries due to the vigilance of staff and the ability for those staff to be more vigilant. It had not been detected in the wild but that did not mean it wasn't there.

R Hunter moved/Cr Buckthought seconded.

WPCC17/24

**THAT this report 'Waihou Piako Zone Status Report to 30 April 2017' (Doc # 10392027) dated 1 February 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/24)**

**River Cross Section Surveys (Waihou & Piako)**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #11) Doc #10372426

The report updated the Committee on River Cross-section Surveys (Waihou & Piako) and identified potential areas of work which would help understand the ongoing changes in these river systems. The report was presented to the Committee by the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

Mayor Goudie moved/Cr Arnold seconded.

WPCC17/25

**THAT the report River Cross-section Surveys (Waihou & Piako) (Doc #10372426 dated 2 May 2017) be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/25)**

**2016/17 Asset Condition and Performance**

File:Z23 068 (Agenda Item #12) Doc #10361188

The report provided clarity to the Committee and to the wider community as to the current condition and performance of the assets within the Waihou Piako Zone. The report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to, by the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- It was noted that with the condition grades 1 meant perfect, 2 and 3 were within design principles and it was the grades 4 and 5 that should be worried about. It was provided that it may only be a component that required remediation and not the whole asset.
- It was provided that the Russell floodgate in the Ottway basin area was to be decommissioned and there was a wait until the next environmental opportunity to decommission the gate.

Mayor Goudie moved/Cr van Rooijen seconded.

WPCC17/26

**THAT this report '2016/17 Asset Condition and Performance Waihou Piako Zone Status Report' (Doc # 10361188) dated 1 May 2017 be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/26)**

**Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting reports from 13/4/2017**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #13) Doc #10415935

The report provided relevant reports from the recent meeting of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee (13 April 2017). The report was presented to the Committee and questions were responded to, by the Zone Manager (Karen Botting).

G Dalton moved/Cr Arnold seconded.

WPCC17/27

**That the report named 'Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting Reports (13 April 2017)' (Doc# 10415935, 10 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/27)**

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)****Koi Carp in the Waihou Piako system**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #14) Doc #10393188

The report provided a discussion paper for the Committee's information on Koi Carp in the Waihou Piako System.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- The images provided for the report had been provided by member Conall Buchanan. With one set of images it was noted that a quarter tonne of fish had been caught in the space of an afternoon. It was provided that there were already significant numbers of the fish in the area and that the zone should be more aggressive in terms of the steps forward and an action plan should be developed now.
- It was noted for members that one way to provide for this was to support extra resourcing for the Biosecurity team through the long term plan.
- A member noted that further information was required with respect to a census on population numbers and behaviours of the fish within the zone. It was noted that for this investigation to commence staff could consider the local knowledge of hotspots such as Hikutaia. It was provided that the question should be returned to the report writer seeking the best ways to control the fish, noting the zone was significantly different to the Waikato/Waipā area and there were a number of options along the rivers with a number of bottlenecks.
- Members noted the need to do something was preferred over another report. It was noted the local knowledge of the fish in the area would be of benefit to any surveyor.

C Buchanan moved/Cr Buckthought seconded.

WPCC17/28

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report Koi Carp in the Waihou Piako system (Doc # 10393188 dated 6 May 2017) be received for information.**

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT Waihou Piako Catchment Committee request a report identifying the numbers of koi carp present and ways in which they might be able to be controlled within the Waihou Piako zone.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/28)**

Cr Husband in the meeting at 12.50pm.

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Upcoming and Potential Agenda Items**

File: Z23 111 (Agenda Item #15) Doc #10420969

Report to provide an opportunity to discuss items identified to date for Catchment Committee meetings in 2016/17 as well as identify any other items to be reported or considered by the Catchment Committee.

R Hunter moved/Cr Husband seconded.

WPCC17/29

**That the report 'Upcoming agenda items 2016-17' (Doc#3791481 dated 10 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/29)**

**Te Whangai Report**

File: Z23 068 (Agenda Item #16.1) Doc #10444414

Report from Gary Dalton to provide an update to the committee on related activities of Te Whangai Trust.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee noted the following points:

- It was proposed within a community meeting at Kaiaua that there would be a whole of catchment approach to flood programme and works would be funded from within the community. Each of the catchments had committed to the whole of catchment approach and sought funding from numerous sources for their ideas.
- Staff undertook to provide the community with information around the recent flood events as education to highlight what the Council's view of management and protection was. The community would then be left to discuss among themselves.
- The Committee noted it was important for Waikato Regional Council and Hauraki District Council as well as the Committee to maintain open communication and continue conversations. It was provided that this would show that lessons were learned from previous interactions with the community.

Mayor Goudie moved/A Arnet seconded.

WPCC17/30

**That the report Te Whangai Trust report (Doc #10444414 dated 15th May 2017 ) be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (WPCC17/30)**

**Members Reports**

File: 03 02 37 (Agenda Item #16)

Verbal reports from members to provide an update to the Committee on matters of interest in the community.

John Bubb – Rural Trust Support – noted that the flood event was a wake-up call in flood zone. He was able to provide the meeting a series of facts and figures for the impact on the area.

Anthony Arnet - Thanked the staff for flood works – looked after the whole area, Karen and working staff, overnight work. Thanks for keeping pumps running.

Cr Donna Arnold – new to committee. Attend rural support meeting at Springdale hall – concern with number of the farmers – hurting at the moment after events.

Mayor Sandra Goudie – noted we were into the 2<sup>nd</sup> week Mangrove management local bill – in conjunction with HDC, setting where communities want mangroves in specified areas in consultation with Iwi, and it goes out for consultation LGA process. More efficient and less expensive process.

Conall Buchanan – noted that with the recent event the scheme worked and worked well. Incurred costs in 10,000k bracket. Current level of service was the minimum and this needed to be recognised. It was important to pay rates. Regional Council land lease rates

were below commercial rates, and this should be remembered when rates were being set that that was for a good reason. Look forward to Te Aroha and Tirohia in Waihou River feedback.

Cr Phillip Buckthought – noted feedback with respect to the mouth of Piako in hoping for a fast track for resolution (oysters). There was a large amount of water being held up by oysters. HDC very focussed on resolving Kaiaua issues.

- With respect to the meeting recently held noted it had been invite only affected farmers at Morrinsville – number of the community were aggrieved as they did not know about the meeting. It was provided that there was more consultation to be provided and further meetings that would include the other parts of the community.

Roger Hunter– noted that with 4 big events it was timely to look at comprehensive consent about waterway maintenance. Reiterated the support and workload of staff and appreciation for the communicative updates from staff.

Cr Stu Husband – Noted that the Seachange report would inform the Healthy Rivers Plan Change two and would look at land used, sediment and nutrient control.

Thanks to staff through floods, good feedback from landowners. Good if council could work in conjunction with rural support where there was knowledge of historical items and sharing of knowledge.

Cr Alan Livingston – acknowledged comments for support of staff. It was timely that Council had a field trip and councillors were able to see the scheme put to test. Critical looking at update of plan requirements, that there was engagement with the Community to determine the level of service expected, and remind to retain the levels it had to be paid for. Rating apportionment as to who paid should be discussed and it was noted that public good component (General Rate) could be reviewed.

Thanks to members for input, staff for work over event lucky in zone.

Meeting closed at 1.25pm.




---

## Coromandel Catchment Committee OPEN MINUTES

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Coromandel Catchment Committee held in Board Room, Thames Coromandel District Council Area Office, 355 Kapanga Road, Coromandel on Monday 15 May 2017 at 10.02am.

---

<b>Chairman</b>	John Sanford	
<b>Deputy Chairman</b>	Kevin Robinson	
	<b>Members</b>	
<b>Coromandel District Council</b>	Cr Terry Walker	
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	Alan Bridson Brett Wilson Reihana Robinson	Carol Nanning Arthur Hinds
<b>Department of Conservation</b>	Dale Tawa	
<b>Chair, Integrated Catchment Management Committee (North)</b>	Cr Stuart Husband	
<b>Either Chairman of Council, <u>or</u> Deputy Chairman of Council</b>	Cr Tipa Mahuta	
<b>Staff</b>	Adam Munro – Section Manager Dean Allen – Zone Manager Dominique Thurlow – Democracy Advisor	

Dale Tawa opened the meeting with a karakia.

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Apologies**

Agenda Item 1

Cr Dal Minogue, Steve Couper, Mayor Sandra Goudie, Cr Alan Livingston for absence and Councillors Mahuta and Husband for lateness.

**Confirmation of Agenda**

Agenda Item 2

A Hinds moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/12

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the agenda for the Coromandel Catchment Committee of 15 May 2017 be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/12).**

**Disclosures of Interest**

Agenda Item3

There were no interests disclosed.

**Public Forum**

Agenda Item 4

The Chair outlined the process for Public Forum noting that there was a need to hear from the public, hence the reason why a Public Forum had been initiated.

The following members of the public spoke on the subjects identified below:

<b>Speaker</b>	<b>Topic</b>
Wendy Pond	Request for the Coromandel Catchment Committee to take on board the Community Board's resolution opposing the use of 1080 in the Coromandel.
John Veysey	There is disbelief in the benefits of 1080. Mr Veysey requested that the Waikato Regional Council, through its Memorandum of Understanding with the Department of Conservation, listen to the voice of the Coromandel people in relation to the use of 1080 and act upon it.

Councillor Husband arrived at the meeting at the meeting at 10.15am.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Committee requested a staff report on the Peninsula Project, which provided funding to the Department of Conservation for pest control.

**Minutes of Coromandel Catchment Committee meeting**

Agenda Item 5 (Doc # 10041236, 10264925)

The minutes of the Coromandel Catchment Committee meeting held on 7 March 2017 and the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting held on 13 April 2017 were taken as read.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- A member felt that there was not sufficient narrative in respect to the points raised by members of the public in the Public Forum. However, another member had a contrary view and felt that the minutes provided a good level of detail.
- Reihana Robinson advised that she voted against the Predator Free 2050 Introduction report.

J Sanford moved/A Hinds seconded

CLSc17/13

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the minutes of the meeting of the Coromandel Catchment Committee held on 7 March 2017 and the extract from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting of 13 April 2017 be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/13)  
Reihana Robinson voted against the motion.**

**Matters Arising from Previous Meeting**

Members outlined the following matters arising from the meeting held on 7 March 2017.

- Councillor Walker advised that Thames Coromandel District Council would be discussing the matters raised by Owen Lloyd on 16 May 2017 and advised the Committee that he would provide an update at the next meeting.
- The Zone Manager provided an update on the service request raised by Owen Lloyd and also an update on the Coromandel Stream Investigation 2016-17 undertaken by Science and Strategy which is currently on schedule.

**Chairman's Report**

Agenda Item 6 (Doc # 10380245)

The Chairperson provided a report on the recent Integrated Catchment Management Committee he attended.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- Discussion centred on the formula used to determine a weather event. In response, staff advised that the Council take its warnings from Met Service who are the formal weather advisors. Following the event, staff are able to determine whether it was a 10-year, 20-year, 50-year or 100-year event.
- A question was raised around where responsibility lies with slips across roads. In response, staff advised that Waikato Regional Council's responsibility is generally rivers, streams and flood control schemes, so when events cause slips on roads, the responsibility for clearing the slip belongs to both the NZ Transport Agency and the local district council. When rivers, streams and culverts form part of the problem, the issue then becomes a shared responsibility with the regional council, NZ Transport Authority and the district council.

- In terms of dumping rocks into the sea, staff advised that the Regional Plan have specific rules around depositing material in coastal areas.
- Members supported the idea of having their next meeting in August at Whangamata, followed by a field trip around the mangrove sites. It was suggested the meeting could start at 9.00am or 9.30am to allow sufficient time to get through the business on the agenda.

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/14

**RESOLVED**

**THAT That the report ‘Chairman’s Report’ (Doc# 10380245 dated 3 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/14).**

**Recommendations and Actions from Coromandel Catchment Committee Meetings**

Agenda Item 7 (Doc # 10259487)

The Committee took the report on actions and issues discussed from previous Coromandel Catchment Committee meetings as read.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- In respect to the recent announcement from Central Government that it will be taking charge of all dumping of toxins, the Zone Manager advised that information had been circulated to members.
- In terms of how the Biosecurity Team manage their updates, they provide an annual plan for the Regional Pest Management Strategy, which is provided to the respective committees.
- In regard to water quality, a member felt that the Waikato Regional Council should extend the number of sites being monitored beyond what was identified in the Snapshot of Coastal Stream Mouth Water Quality in the Coromandel area report. The Zone Manager advised that the District Health Board, Thames Coromandel District Council and the Waikato Regional Council are working through the outcomes of the Snapshot study to determine the roles and responsibilities of each of the agencies.

Cr Husband moved/C Nanning seconded

CLSc17/15

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Recommendations & Actions from former Coromandel Catchment Committee Meetings” (Doc# 10259487 dated 15 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/15).**

**Coromandel Zone Status Report – 1 March to 6 May 2017**

Agenda Item 8 (Doc # 10219946)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) and Section Manager (A Munro) outlined the status for Coromandel Zone activities and work programmes, covering the period from 1 March 2017 to 6 May 2017.

The Zone Manager advised that the references to 'as reported in May' on page 39 of the agenda should read 'as reported in March'.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- Councillor Walker advised staff of an ongoing flooding issues at Te Weiti and Waikiekie, Whangamata that is the direct result of slashing's from forestry which then blocks the culverts causing water to spill over onto land. Councillor Walker requested that Waikato Regional Council investigate. Staff agreed to provide an update at the next meeting of the Coromandel Catchment Committee.

Councillor Mahuta arrived at the meeting at 11.10am.

- Given that the Coromandel is the coastal playground of the Waikato Region, a member was of the view that the Coromandel would benefit from a greater level of regional funding for coastal management.
- The Committee commended staff for the great reporting to members during the recent flood events.
- In regard to the Small Scale Community Initiatives Fund, a member questioned the level of accountability that is required from recipients. In response, the Committee was advised that when recipients receive funding it is conditional upon the applicant reporting back to Council that key milestones have been met.
- Staff undertook to follow up on how the deficit of \$11,000 had arisen through the targeted rate for the Coromandel Catchment.

J Sanford moved/Cr Walker seconded

CLSc17/16

**RESOLVED**

**THAT this report 'Coromandel Zone Status Report – 1 March 2017 to 6 May 2017' (Doc# 10219946 dated 7 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/16).**

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review**

Agenda Item 9 (Doc # 10360190)

The Principal Advisor (G Ryan) provided the Coromandel Catchment Committee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council's 2018- 2028 Long Term Plan and sought feedback on the known issues affecting the Zone's activities, and alerts the Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- It was acknowledged that the Waikato Regional Council has existing flood control schemes such as Grahams Creek, Te Puru and Waioumu. The question was raised as to whether the Waikato Regional Council takes a proactive approach to catchment new works. Members were advised that they have the opportunity through the Long Term Plan to identify issues that may require attention.

- In terms of other issues that may require attention in the future, staff flagged that there are a number of Treaty of Waitangi settlements that are currently being progressed that may require a review of the way that the flood protection, river management and land drainage activities area delivered.
- The Zone Manager identified a number of Zone specific Long Term Plan issues, these being:
  - (i) That the remaining two Harbour and Catchment Management Plans be completed within the next three years.
  - (ii) The Hauraki Treaty Settlement, which, when signed is likely to require a more permanent funding stream.
  - (iii) Maintenance of mangrove clearance sites.
  - (iv) Maintenance of mangrove seedlings.
  - (v) Increasing costs associated with integrated catchment activities.
- The Zone Manager advised the Committee that the purpose of the report is to decide whether there are any other matters that should be included in the list of priorities.
- It was noted that a programme for training trappers, which was raised with Council a number of years ago, should be included on the list.
- Members questioned whether kauri dieback and myrtle rust are going to remain a focus for the Waikato Regional Council.
- The Zone Manager undertook to distribute information to the Committee on the funding splits for regional and zone funding.
- It was suggested that the next meeting comprise a workshop on Long Term Plan issues.
- In regard to Environmental Farming Systems staff advised that this team work with partners, stakeholders and the community to promote land management practices to improve environmental and agricultural sustainability. Catchment planning and management is a separate service that works with partners, stakeholders and community to improve soil conservation and water quality.
- Members were advised that there are opportunities for the catchment committees to partner with other agencies in order to achieve its objectives. The question was raised as to whether the Coromandel Catchment Committee is well positioned for opportunities for third party funding. Staff advised that as much as possible Waikato Regional Council align its priorities with other agencies, acknowledging that this is an area that requires more focus.
- Reihana Robinson formally advised that she is opposed to any increase in funding for pest control.

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/17

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review” (Doc #10360190 dated 28 April 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/17).**

R Robinson moved/Cr Walker seconded

CLSc17/17.1

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the initiative to seek funding from third party sources, channelled through the Waikato Regional Council, as they arise in accordance with Zone priorities.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/17.1).**

Councillor Husband left the meeting at 12.32pm.

The meeting adjourned for lunch at 12.32pm and reconvened at 1.14pm when Item 10 was considered.

**Disaster Recovery Fund Application – Coromandel Zone Flood Event – March 2017**

Agenda Item 10 (Doc # 10286128)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) provided a summary of the damage caused as a result of multiple flood events in the Coromandel Zone during March and April with a focus on the 7 to 11 March 2017 event and sought funding assistance for subsequent works from the Waikato Regional Council's Disaster Recovery Reserve Fund.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- It was noted that the Grahams Creek scheme functioned well during the recent weather events.
- The Committee supported the request to transfer \$202,000 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Coromandel Zone Reserve to fund the March 2017 storm damage recovery works in the Coromandel Zone.

Cr Walker moved/C Nanning seconded

CLSc17/18

**RESOLVED**

1. **THAT this report 'Disaster Recovery Fund Application – Coromandel Zone Flood Event – March 2017' (Doc# 10286128) dated 7 May 2017 be received.**

**RECOMMENDED**

2. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee request that Council transfer \$202,000.00 from the Regional Disaster Recovery Fund to the Coromandel Zone Reserve to fund the March 2017 storm damage recovery works in the Coromandel Zone.**

The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/18).

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Harbour and Catchment Management Planning Programme Update**

Agenda Item 11 (Doc # 10162836)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) provided an overview and update of the projects underway under the Harbour and Catchment Management Plan work programme and sought support for the current approach and priorities, and for the proposed funding arrangements.

The Zone Manager noted two corrections on page 66 of the agenda:

- Waitekuri Stream is a sub-catchment of Whangapoua.
- Wharekawa Stream is a sub-catchment of Wharekawa catchment.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Coromandel Focus Catchment Project is a primary outcome of the Harbour and Catchment Management Plans. It looks at key methods of minimising erosion and resultant sediment deposition to sensitive receiving environments.

Two sub-catchments were chosen, the Wharekawa River at Wharekawa, and the Waitekuri Stream, sub-catchment of Whangapoua. These areas were chosen based on risk of sediment contamination, types of land use, and connections with the coast, great community engagement and ability to view/demonstrate good practice. In respect to funding for this project, if the issues are captured in the Harbour and Catchment Management Plan and a clear line of sight can be demonstrated, it will put Council in a good position to apply for funding. The Committee supported the project.

- Members were advised that Thames Coromandel District Council are working on a project that looks at reusing grey water.
- The recent announcement of the Tourism Infrastructure Fund will provide leverage for the work Council undertakes in the Coromandel.
- In order to meet the Strategic Direction, the preparation of new Harbour and Catchment Management Plans requires additional funding for resourcing.

K Robinson moved/C Nanning seconded

CLSc17/19

**RESOLVED**

1. **THAT the report 'Outline of the Implementation of the Harbour and Catchment Plans' (Doc # 10162836, 8 May 2017) be received**
2. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the current approach and priorities identified for Harbour and Catchment Management work programme.**
3. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the Coromandel Zone in seeking additional funding to develop the two new Harbour and Catchment Management Plans as per the Strategic Direction through the Long Term Plan.**

The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/19).

**SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

**Coromandel Catchment Committee Zone Reserves – Status and Options for Use**

Agenda Item 12 (Doc # 10163700)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) advised the Committee of the status of the Coromandel Catchment Zone reserves and the options related to potential areas of expenditure and seeks recommendations on expenditure in relation to the Harbour and Catchment Management Plan implementation, including the Coromandel Focus Catchment Project.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Committee supported the recommendations outlined in the report.

J Sanford moved/C Nanning seconded

CLSc17/20

**RESOLVED**

1. **THAT the report 'Coromandel Catchment Zone Reserves - Status and Options for Use' (Doc # 10163700, 8 May 2017) be received for information**

**RECOMMENDED**

2. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee support the transfer of \$100,000 from the Coromandel General Operating Reserve to the Coromandel Zone Disaster Reserve.**
3. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee agree in principle to the allocation of \$300,000 of Coromandel General Operating Reserve towards implementation of Harbour and Catchment Management Plan ‘step-change’ (outside of business as usual) activities over a three year period, beginning the 2018/19 financial year.**
4. **THAT the Coromandel Catchment Committee agree in principle to the allocation of \$150,000 of Coromandel General Operating Reserve over the next three (3) years for Implementation of Focus Catchment Project activities, beginning in the 17/18 financial year.**

The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/20).

**Tairua Mangrove Removal Project – Status and Completion Options**

Agenda Item 13 (Doc # 10163699)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) outlined the status of the Tairua mangrove removal project and sought recommendations on the options to complete this project.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Committee raised concerns in respect to partial clearance at Oturu (drainage channel) and Cemetery (view shaft)
- Questions were raised about seedling maintenance, particularly when the funding ends. Staff advised that ongoing seedling maintenance will be a matter for consideration during the Long Term Plan process.
- In regard to the comment in the report stating that *“the Tairua-Pauanui Community Board confirmed that Option 3, partial revised clearance is their recommended option”*, staff advised that the Community Board indicated that they had the mandate to provide guidance on this matter on behalf of the community. A number of members expressed concerns at recommending partial clearance based on a recommendation from a Community Board that comprises a small number of people. Councillor Walker advised that he would be attending a meeting during the week of 22 May 2017 where this matter will be discussed and undertook to report back to the Committee on the outcomes. As such the Committee agreed to support the recommendations subject to confirmation being sought from the Community Board that groups such as Tairua Residents’ and Ratepayers’ Association were in support.

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/21

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report ‘Tairua Mangrove Removal Project - Status and Completion Options’ (Doc# 10163699, 8 May 2017) be received for information.**

The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/21).

J Sanford moved/A Hinds seconded

CLSc17/21.1

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT Option 3, Partial Revised Mangrove Clearance in Tairua is recommended to the Project Steering Group, subject to confirmation at the next meeting of the Tairua-Pauanui Community Board.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/21.1).**

Councillor Mahuta left the meeting at 2.35pm.

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

**Members' Reports**

Agenda Item 14

Members provided a verbal report noting the following:

**Member's Report – Reihana Robinson**

Agenda Item 14.1 (Doc # 10364033)

The Democracy Advisor outlined the process for recommendations contained in members reports, noting that any recommendations that the Committee would like to explore further would be put on to upcoming agenda items, where the Committee would discuss at their next meeting.

The Section Manager (A Munro) undertook to take the recommendations noted in the Member's report and ask staff to provide a response on the specific matters identified in the report. Once the responses have been collated, the Section Manager undertook to circulate the document to members.

Reihana Robinson spoke to her report.

J Sanford moved/Cr Walker seconded

CLSc17/22

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Members Report from Reihana Robinson' (Doc# 10364033, dated 1 May 2017) be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/22).**

**Member's Report – Councillor Dal Minogue**

Agenda Item 14.2 (Doc # 10373761)

In his absence, the Chair took the report as read.

J Sanford moved/Brett Wilson seconded

CLSc17/23

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report 'Members Report from Dal Minogue' (Doc# 10373761, dated 2 May 2017) be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/23).**

**Member's Report – Arthur Hinds**

Agenda Item 14.3 (Doc # 10381003)

Arthur Hinds report was taken as read.

A Hinds moved/J Sanford seconded

CLSc17/24

**RESOLVED****That the report 'Members Report from Arthur Hinds' (Doc# 10381003, dated 3 May 2017) be received for information.****The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/).****Member's Report – Alan Bridson**

Agenda Item 14.4 (Doc # 10377338)

Alan Bridson's report was taken as read.

A Bridson moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/25

**RESOLVED****THAT the report 'Members Report from Allan Bridson' (Doc# 10377338, dated 3 May 2017) be received for information****The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/25).****Member's Report – Brett Wilson**

Agenda Item 14.5 (Doc # 10015420)

Brett Wilson spoke to his report.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- The Zone Manager undertook to follow up on water quality testing in the Otahu River.

B Wilson moved/C Nanning seconded

CLSc17/26

**RESOLVED****That the report 'Members Report from Brett Wilson' (Doc# 10386705, dated 4 May 2017) be received for information.****The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/26).****Member's Report – Stephen Couper**

Agenda Item 14.6 (Doc # 10392736)

In his absence, the Chair took Steve Couper's report as read.

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/27

**RESOLVED**

**That the report ‘Members Report from Steve Couper’ (Doc# 10392736, dated 8 May 2017) be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/27).**

**Member’s Report – Dale Tawa (Department of Conservation)**

Dale Tawa introduced himself to the Committee and provided a verbal report noting the following:

- Sought guidance from staff on his role and responsibilities as a member on the Committee.
- Aerial operations have reduced from 4,500ha to 2,500ha as a result of using alternative pest control methods. Following aerial drops compliance is undertaken which is independently audited.
- Prior to aerial operations, the Department of Conservation is in dialogue with landowners.
- Predator Free 2050 is all about possums, rats and stoats.
- In regard to myrtle rust, the Department of Conservation are working to find a solution.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Committee raised or noted the following matters:

- Is there any opportunity for aerial 1080 drops to be notified over the radio on the day that they are occurring? In response, the Committee was advised that the Department of Conservation provide 24 hours’ notice to landowners affected by the drop.
- The Committee was advised that there have been good results with respect to the Good Nature traps

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/28

**RESOLVED**

**That the verbal report ‘Member’s Report from Dale Tawa, from the Department of Conservation, be received for information**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/28).**

**Member’s Report – Carol Nanning**

Carol Nanning provided a verbal report noting the following:

**Tapu Flood Mitigation Committee (TFMC)**

- The Tapu River carried the recent floodwaters without breaching its banks indicating that the level of river-works at Tapu are keeping the river free running and are adequate for the impacts of weather events such as we have seen in March and April.

- The TFMC are ready to further reduce our targeted rate since we have well over the \$50,000.00 that we agreed to hold as contingency funds when TFMC/WRC went through the process of consulting with the Tapu Creek Community during the last cycle. We are keen to work together with both the Zone Manager and Section Manager to establish a way forward with this.

#### Cyclones etc.

- I would like to thank WRC Staff for their tremendous efforts through this period; the weather advisories were great and I imagine the subsequent body of reactive work will have taken its toll on all involved. Many thanks.

#### Myrtle Rust

- The arrival of this wind borne fungal disease in Northland is of concern as it could very well change our NZ landscape. We must be vigilant in keeping our communities aware of what to look for and what to do (or not) as the talcum powder like spores are so easily transferred.
- There is a lot of information for the public but most important is to identify where the plant/s are, take photos if possible and report to MPI.

#### A shout out to Thames Coast Kiwi Care (TCKC)

- TCKC's efforts to ensure kiwi survival is gaining momentum as local community interest and involvement is increasing.
- Whilst the group originally had a 'hands off' approach, a repeat kiwi survey of the whole Coromandel Peninsula showed that kiwi populations that used to be peninsula wide had declined and none were detected south of Thames. Kiwi were only surviving in areas where active pest control for mustelids (in particular) were being carried out, largely through the efforts of community groups.
- TCKC entered into an arrangement with the Rotoroa Island Trust and Auckland Zoo to carry out Operation Nest Egg (ONE) where eggs are carefully harvested, taken to the Zoo to be incubated and hatched, then released on pest free Rotoroa Is. This ensures every kiwi that returns is big and strong enough (over 1 kg) to fend off stoats. Fifteen kiwi have now been returned to their natal area, 10 of those most recently.
- The efforts of such community group's commitment to carry out this work, by maintaining their vision requires tremendous leadership and is inspirational.

#### Post Script

- The inclusion of links and information 'outside the scope of the ICM' (page 39 and 40) was a great idea and very much appreciated.

J Sanford moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/29

#### **RESOLVED**

**That the verbal report 'Member's Report from Carol Nanning' be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/29).**

**Upcoming Agenda Items**

Agenda Item 15 (Doc # 8977097)

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) tabled a replacement report (Doc # 8977097).

The Coromandel Zone Manager (D Allen) outlined items for Catchment Committee meetings scheduled in 2016/17 and sought ideas for future agenda items.

The following agenda items were put forward:

- A workshop around Long Term Plan matters.
- Update on the Coastal Plan review.
- Matters raised in Reihana Robinson's report.

A Hinds moved/K Robinson seconded

CLSc17/30

**RESOLVED**

**That the replacement report 'Upcoming agenda Items 2017' (Doc# 8977097) dated 27 February 2017 be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (CLSc17/30).**

The meeting closed at 3.30pm.

Doc # 10396108

**MINUTES OF A MEETING OF THE AKA AKA OTAUA LAND DRAINAGE SUBCOMMITTEE OF THE  
WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL HELD IN THE PRESIDENTS ROOM WAIUKU COSMOPOLITAN CLUB  
ON FRIDAY 7 APRIL 2017.**

**1. Present.**

**MESSRS S GOODWRIGHT (CHAIRMAN), J KEARY, R LITCHFIELD, C SHUKER, B SMITH, R SPOONER,  
T VOLZ AND G PEACH (SECRETARY).**

**Also in attendance – R Austen and S Day (Ratepayers)**

**2. Apologies.**

Apologies were received and sustained from Councillors J Hayman (Waikato Regional Council),  
and Mr T Walters.

**3. Confirmation of Minutes.**

**RESOLVED CHAIRMAN – MR LITCHFIELD.**

**THAT THE MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE AKA AKA OTAUA LAND DRAINAGE SUBCOMMITTEE  
OF THE WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL HELD ON FRIDAY 10 MARCH 2017, AS CIRCULATED, BE  
APPROVED AND CONFIRMED.**

**4. Matters Arising From Minutes.**

**(a) C & S Maunsell Bright Road** – Mr Russell advised that he has contacted Fonterra and other  
interested parties requesting a meeting to discuss organic farming in Land Drainage areas

**(b) Floodgates** – Bad weather has affected work on the Loudon and Harris floodgates.

**5. Monthly Financial Report.**

Mr Spooner tabled Financial Statement for March.

**RESOLVED MESSRS SPOONER – WALTERS.**

**THAT THE FINANCIAL REPORT BE RECEIVED.**

**6. Drain Spraying Report.**

Mr Shuker reported that weather conditions have prevented any spraying.

**7. Machine Report.**

The Chairman advised that the following drains have been cleaned during the last month. Ten Foot,  
Aka Aka Stream, Formans, hermitage and the Half Mile.

**RESOLVED CHAIRMAN – MR KEARY.**

**THAT THE MACHINE REPORT BE RECEIVED.**

**8. Health and Safety.**

Nil.

**9. Other Business.**

**1. Western Drain** – Messrs Austen and Day discussed with the Committee the possible improvements to reduce ponding, on their respective properties, during heavy rain. It was acknowledged that both properties receive runoff from hill country to the north, and that some of the land is lower than other land closer to the Waikato River. The Committee advised that the lowering of the Rasmussen Culvert will provide better drainage for the lower upstream land. Installing a floodgate on the culvert will not improve the drainage during heavy rain. Increasing the volume of water in the Western Drain will be more beneficial to the area. In this respect, a Site Works Programme is being prepared for submission to Council, to undertake berm reshaping of four scheme drains. 300m of the Western Drain has been included.

**2. Reserve Drain** – The Chairman reported that he had spoken to a property owner, who was carrying out maintenance on a paddock next to the Drain, not to interfere with the existing berm.

**3. P Walter, Subdivision, Hoods Landing Road** – Is seeking consent to subdivide a 4000m<sup>2</sup> lot, which includes an existing dwelling, from the farm property. This lot will be provided with a land drainage easement over an existing private drain that discharges into the Otatau Creek.

**RESOLVED CHAIRMAN – MR SHUKER.**

**THAT AS LOT 1 IS BEING PROVIDED WITH AN EASEMENT TO A “SCHEME DRAIN” BEING THE OTAUA CREEK, THAT THE COMMITTEE HAS NO COMMENT TO MAKE ON THE SUBDIVISION OTHER THAN TO ADVISE OF THE LAND DRAINAGE STANDARDS OF THE REGIONAL COUNCIL.**

**4. Main Stopbank** – Mr Spooner to provide latest levels of the stopbank for consideration at the next meeting of the Committee.

There being no further business, the meeting closed at 12.05pm

Approved and confirmed this 12 day of May 2017.

**(CHAIRMAN)**



**MINUTES OF A MEETING OF THE AKA AKA OTAUA LAND DRAINAGE SUBCOMMITTEE OF THE  
WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL HELD IN THE PRESIDENTS ROOM WAIUKU COSMOPOLITAN CLUB  
ON FRIDAY 12 MAY 2017.**

**1. Present.**

**MESSRS S GOODWRIGHT (CHAIRMAN), J KEARY, R LITCHFIELD, C SHUKER, B SMITH, R SPOONER,  
T VOLZ, T WALTERS AND G PEACH (SECRETARY).**

**2. Apologies.**

Apologies were received and sustained from Councillors J Hayman (Waikato Regional Council) and J Church (Waikato District Council).

**3. Confirmation of Minutes.**

**RESOLVED CHAIRMAN – MR VOLZ.**

**THAT THE MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE AKA AKA OTAUA LAND DRAINAGE SUBCOMMITTEE  
OF THE WAIKATO REGIONAL COUNCIL HELD ON FRIDAY 7 APRIL 2017, AS CIRCULATED, BE  
APPROVED AND CONFIRMED.**

**4. Matters Arising From Minutes.**

**(a) C & S Maunsell Bright Road** – Mr Spooner advised that he is still waiting for comment from interested parties regarding organic farming.

**(b) Floodgates** – Mr Spooner reported that the Loudon floodgate is nearing completion and that due to weather conditions, the replacement of the Harris floodgate has been deferred until the next financial year.

**5. Monthly Financial Report.**

Mr Spooner tabled Financial Statement for April.

**RESOLVED MESSRS SPOONER – KEARY.**

**THAT THE FINANCIAL REPORT BE RECEIVED.**

**6. Drain Spraying Report.**

Mr Shuker reported that weather conditions have prevented any spraying.

**7. Machine Report.**

The Chairman advised that the following drains have been cleaned during the last month. Western, Mc Carthy, Reserve, Keary, Hiscock, Eastern, Mangawhero, Arrowville, Mawhitiwhiti, Jolly- Offset and the lower part of the Spencer. Pump maintenance and cleaning of screens was also undertaken.

**RESOLVED CHAIRMAN – MR KEARY.**

**THAT THE MACHINE REPORT BE RECEIVED.**

**8. Health and Safety.**

Nil.

**9. Other Business.**

**1. Berm upgrading** – The Secretary and Mr Spooner are preparing a Site Works Programme for the upgrading of berms in four areas. The programme to be lodged for approval with Council.

**2. Rasmussen Drain Culvert** – The Chairman reported that the new culvert pipes have been delivered, but that weather will have to improve before the replacement of the culvert can be done.

There being no further business, the meeting closed at 12.05pm

Approved and confirmed this 9 day of June 2017.

**(CHAIRMAN)**

---

**Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee  
OPEN MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee held at 53 Whitaker Street, Te Aroha on 29 May 2017 at 10.00am.

	<b>Present:</b>
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	Anthony Arnet (Chair) Ian Coombe Wayne Gore Stephen Hannah Steve Lunjevich Stuart Steverson
<b>Waikato Regional Council</b>	Cr Dal Minogue
	<b>In Attendance</b>
<b>Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee Chair</b>	Robert Hicks
<b>Waikato Regional Council Staff</b>	Karen Botting – Zone Manager Hauraki Adam Munro – Manager Hauraki/Coromandel Ian Morgan – Works Supervisor Natalie Hallett – Works Supervisor Warren Coffey – Catchment Management Officer Jenny Robertson – Acting Democracy Advisor

**SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)****Apologies**

(Agenda item 1)

An apology from Rod McIntyre and Ian Coombe's apology for early departure were received.

**Confirmation of Agenda**

(Agenda item 2)

A late item relating to 2017/18 Rates Setting had been requested and Subcommittee members were advised that Standing Orders provided for major items to be dealt with by way of Standing Order 3.7.5:

3.7.5 – “An item that is not on the agenda for a meeting may be dealt with at the meeting if  
 (a) the local authority by resolution so decides; and  
 (b) the presiding member explains at the meeting at a time when it is open to the public, -  
 (i) the reason why the item is not on the agenda; and  
 (ii) the reason why the discussion of the item cannot be delayed until a subsequent meeting.”

[s. 46A(7), LGOIMA]

The Chair advised members that he had requested inclusion of the report however the request had been received too late for circulation with the meeting papers. The late item would provide for the Subcommittee to convey confirmation of the 2017/18 rates requirement prior to Council's adoption of the draft Annual Plan.

Cr Minogue moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/11

**THAT the agenda for the meeting of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee of 29 May 2017 as circulated, with inclusion of a report “2017/18 Rates Setting” (Section B, Doc # 10555444 dated 26 May 2017) to be discussed after Item 9, be confirmed as the business for the meeting.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/11)**

**Disclosures of Interest**

(Agenda item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Minutes of Previous Meeting**

File: 03 02 12 (Agenda Item 4) Doc # 10160034 and 10445082

The minutes of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting held on 27 March 2017 and extracts from the Integrated Catchment Management Committee meeting held on 13 April 2017 and the Council meeting held on 27 April 2017 were taken as read.

S Steverson moved/S Hannah seconded

TVSc17/12

**THAT the Minutes of the Thames Valley Drainage Advisory Subcommittee meeting of 27 March 2017 be received and approved as a true and correct record.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/12)**

**Issues/Actions from Subcommittee Meeting 27 March 2017**

File: 03 02 12 (Agenda Item 5) Doc # 10287057

The Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting) reported on actions and issues discussed at the previous Subcommittee meeting held on 27 March 2017.

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted that:

- Staff were advised that the McLean Scale request related to measurement of rabbit infestations. Staff would ask Council's Biosecurity team to provide an explanation regarding the McLean Scale.
- The transmission by birds of velvet weed seeds was considered to be low risk and no further action was proposed.
- A booklet "Farmer's Guide to Permitted Activities" [Doc # 3417607] was available on request.
- Due to the recent flood events, staff were yet to report back with regard to urban rates for drainage services when a rural area was subdivided, using Matamata as an example.
- It was understood that, subject to their consent, current community representatives would continue in their role as members of the Subcommittee until the end of the calendar year, regardless of any property ownership changes during that period.
- It was noted that a drain (as defined in the regional plan) could be cleaned without requiring resource consent, however to clean a stream would require a consent.

A Arnet moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/13

**THAT the report "Issues/Actions from Subcommittee Meeting 27 March 2017" (Doc #10287057 dated 29 April 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/13)**

**Chair's Report May 2017**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 6) Doc # 10425718

The Chair (A Arnet) presented his report on related activities since the last meeting of the Subcommittee.

During questions, answers and related discussion Subcommittee members noted that:

- During the recent Cyclone Cook event, some overtopping had occurred including on banks where there was maize cropping.
- In the process of drainage construction in the 1970s, spoil had been dug from the floor of drains and deposited on each side of the drain, with the landowners being able to spread the spoil, undertake maize cropping, or leave the spoil untouched at their discretion. The spoil had not been intended as a stopbank. The post-flood reporting to be undertaken by staff would include review of those banks and whether they should be included as assets and be part of the asset management system.

- Silt build up in the bottom of the main pump drains was a concern and the frequency of clearing these at two yearly intervals was insufficient. Staff agreed to look into this as part of the flood remediation work programme.

A Arnet moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/14

**THAT the report “Chair’s Report – May 2017”** (Doc # 10425718 dated 11 May 2017) **be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/14)**

**Thames Valley Drainage Area Work Progress Report – 30th April 2017**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 7) Doc # 10424468

Presented by Works Supervisors (I Morgan and N Hallett), this report provided an update on the progress of the works programme in the Thames Valley Drainage area from 1 July 2016 to 30 April 2017 and the proposed works programme for the remainder of the year to 30 June 2017. A presentation [Doc # 10319573] was provided.

During questions, answers and related discussion, it was noted that:

- Due to the recent floods, it was likely that a number of works proposed for the current financial year would be deferred until the coming year.
- Drains that were blocked by weed or sediment would not have the benefit of the intended fall, resulting in the pumps not operating correctly. Those problems had arisen at Butterworths and Springdale.
- Anyone discovering issues should telephone the staff as soon as possible.
- Concern was expressed about an issue involving a tree requiring removal, which had taken several months to be acted upon. Unfortunately the job was commenced when the rainstorm started and instead of being a relatively easy task the tree removal had become a major undertaking. Staff noted that the tree removal had been impacted by staff changes and unfortunate timing.

W Gore moved/S Steverson seconded

TVSc17/15

**THAT the report “Thames Valley Drainage Area Work Progress Report – 30<sup>th</sup> April 2017”** (Doc 10424468 dated 11 May 2017) **be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/15)**

**Thames Valley Drainage Area Status Report 30 April 2017**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 8) Doc # 10425093

Presented by Hauraki Zone Manager (K Botting), this report provided commentary on the financial status of the Thames Valley Drainage area including statements for each of the subdivisions for the 2016/17 financial year. The statements reflected revenue and expenditure compared to budget, and summarised the reserve movements for each individual area. The report included a section on ‘other matters’ as identified by staff.

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted that:

- Total revenue and expenditure were very close to the year to date budget and no issues were expected.

- The only expected change would be increased electricity costs as a result of the flood events. The increased costs would not increase rating but would be funded by reserves. The Regional Council was part of a consortium that had negotiated a reduced electricity rate. Standing charges would depend on the size of the pump.
- In response to a question on the above, staff agreed to provide the stand-by power costs associated with flood pumps at the next meeting.
- The infrastructural asset revaluation was being progressed throughout the Council. The cost for renewal of a flood gate had more than doubled and therefore the costs of replacing 'like with like' had a direct impact on the depreciation to be funded, with a change to the rating requirement. The other asset categories were remaining reasonably stable.
- The Waihou-Piako Zone Plan was under review and would help at a strategic level in identifying where to focus attention. Staff would provide a copy of the Zone Plan to this Subcommittee for information.
- The Drainage Advisory Subcommittees would have input into a Drainage Management Plan, which had been commenced.
- A draft Regional Asset Management Plan was expected in August and it would include assets such as stopbanks, pump stations and floodgates.
- With regard to Drain Trial Site 4, Catchment Management Officer (W Coffey) had been working with the landowners, who had been very supportive and had offered to undertake the fencing themselves. Planting would be undertaken in June by a very cost-effective contractor.

S Lunjevich moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/16

**THAT the report "Thames Valley Drainage Area Status Report 30 April 2017" (Doc # 10425093 dated 11 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/16)**

### **Thames Valley Drainage March – April 2017 Flood Event**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 9) Doc # 10496994

Presented by Manager Hauraki/Coromandel (A Munro), this report provided a summary of the damage caused as a result of multiple flood events on the Hauraki Plains during March and April 2017 and outlined the next steps to be undertaken by staff.

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted that:

- The efforts of the Zone Manager and two Works Supervisors in keeping the pumps operational during the flood events were acknowledged and staff expressed their appreciation of the support provided by Subcommittee members.

Ian Coombe left the meeting at 11.06 am.

- Rainfall over the weekend prior to this meeting had resulted in a return of surface water as a result of ground saturation remaining from the flood events.
- Recovery works were being recorded on a spreadsheet and prioritised, however some remediation work was being hampered by the boggy ground.
- Where overtopping had occurred within the scheme design, it had been seen by some in the media and community as a system failure. It was noted that many of the general public did not understand how the scheme operated and landowner changes had resulted in less understanding of the scheme. A landowner meeting had been held to provide information and a Communications Plan would be developed to assist in

education about scheme performance. It was important for residents to understand that in a major event there would be overtopping, and to know where that water should pond and to expect that banks could erode.

- A regional flood report was to be prepared by Council's Hazards Team, as well as some separate investigations as part of the Piako Scheme Review, and that information would be made available to this Subcommittee.

S Hannah moved/S Lunjevich seconded

TVSc17/17

**THAT the report "Thames Valley Drainage March-April 2017 Flood Event"** (Doc # 10496994 dated 10 May 2017) **be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/17)**

## **SECTION B: (FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL)**

As agreed earlier in the meeting, a late item was discussed at this time.

### **2017/18 Rates Setting**

File: 75 80 20 (Late Item) Doc # 10555444

Copies of the report "2017/18 Rates Setting" (Doc # 10555444 dated 26 May 2017) were distributed. Presented by Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting), this report presented the 2017/18 rates requirement for confirmation.

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted that:

- The rates requirement reflected the agreed Long Term Plan budgets.
- The Long Term Plan had identified that the reserves in the Waiheke and Whakahoro subdivisions would be used for maintenance work over a period of time and the 2% increase in rating was to keep those reserves at a set level.

A Arnet moved/S Lunjevich seconded

TVSc17/18

### **RESOLVED**

**THAT the report "2017/18 Rates Setting"** (Doc # 10555444 dated 26 May 2017) **be received; and**

### **RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the rate requirement be recommended to Council for 2017/18.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/18)**

## **SECTION A: (UNDER DELEGATION AND FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL)**

### **Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 10) Doc # 10427119

Presented by Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting), this report provided the Subcommittee with an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan. The report sought feedback from the Subcommittee on the known issues impacting activities that required a response from the Plan, and alerted the Subcommittee to other issues that might require attention in the future.

During questions, answers and related discussion, it was noted that:

- Over the next six months, the Subcommittee would have the opportunity to make decisions regarding the future of maintenance programmes and rating during development of the Long Term Plan.
- Any proposed major capital works needed to be included in the Long Term Plan and the plan process provided an opportunity to talk through any improvements or changes.
- The Long Term Plan provided budget figures for the first three years and projected figures for the following seven years.
- The Hauraki Treaty settlement and Healthy Rivers Wai Ora project would have an impact on the Long Term Plan.
- Stakeholder engagement should include liaison with Territorial Authorities and the Department of Conservation (DOC) with regard to river management and the peat dome, including an ongoing understanding with DOC regarding levels and weirs.
- It was understood that the treaty settlement had been finalized with regard to the Thames Valley area but had not yet been signed off with regard to the Hauraki Gulf. Iwi-owned land would be regarded as private ownership. The settlement was heading towards co-governance and co-management of the rivers however it was not anticipated that there would be legislation as occurred for the Waikato River.
- The drainage plan review was expected to be undertaken in Year 5 and would be a region-wide review.
- The issue of urban boundary impacts on land drainage would require resolution including responsibility and funding for the removal of silt.
- If changes were required, such as additional staff, the proposal would require a business case and if successful would form part of the budget that Council would take into the consultation phase for the Long Term Plan.
- The report included two suggested options, Option A being to acknowledge new issues and ensure funding for the work to be undertaken, and Option B to constrain work to fit the existing budgets and drop the level of service over future years. It was agreed that Option A would be a sensible approach.
- It was agreed that the first two issues on Page 47 of the agenda, those being increased costs associated with flood protection and land drainage activities and community expectations, be combined.
- A suggestion was made that the Chair should have regular meetings with the Department of Conservation regarding the influence of the Kōpuatai peat dome on land drainage assets.
- More work was to be undertaken on the Long Term Plan and staff would report back with a more detailed report as the process unfolded.

S Steverson moved/A Arnet seconded

TVSc17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service Review”**

(Doc # 10427119 dated 11 May 2017) **be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/19)**

**Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting Reports (13 April 2017)**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 11) Doc # 10420981

Presented by Manager Hauraki/Coromandel (A Munro), this report provided relevant reports from the meeting of the Integrated Catchment Management Committee held on 13 April 2017, for the information of Subcommittee members.

Cr Minogue moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/20

**THAT the report “Integrated Catchment Management Committee Meeting Reports (13 April 2017)” (Doc # 10420981 dated 10 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/19)**

### **2016/17 Land Drainage Asset Condition**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 12) Doc # 10497500 and 10495921

Presented by Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting), this report provided clarity to the Subcommittee and to the wider community as to the current condition and performance of the drainage assets within the Waihou-Piako zone. The information in the 2016/17 Condition Report assisted staff in managing the assets and identifying future work requirements.

During questions, answers and related discussion it was noted that:

- An annual physical inspection of all assets had been undertaken. Overall the Thames Valley drainage assets were in good condition.
- Health and Safety requirements might require replacement of the Whakahoro floodgate winch with a new style of winch.
- It was noted that the McCabe retaining wall had been replaced with a rock wall.
- Staff would follow up regarding Chatfields and Moore-Hopper middle floodgates that were not included in the list.

S Lunjevich moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/21

**THAT the report “2016/17 Land Drainage Asset Condition” (Doc # 19497500 dated 17 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/21)**

### **Muggeridge's Pump Station Update**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 13) Doc # 10393548

Presented by Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting), this report provided an update on the status of the Muggeridge's project for the information of the Subcommittee.

During questions, answers and related discussion Subcommittee members noted the following points:

- Consultation had been undertaken with landowners and Fish & Game prior to lodging the resource consent application.
- Staff were waiting to be advised whether the consent application would be notified or non-notified.
- The design would include fish-friendly elements.

S Hannah moved/Cr Minogue seconded

TVSc17/22

**THAT the report “Muggeridge's Pump Station Update” (Doc # 10393548 dated 8 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/22)**

**Koi Carp in the Waihou-Piako System**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 14) Doc # 10393188

In presenting this report on Koi Carp, the Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting) noted that the report had been requested by the Waihou-Piako Catchment Committee and might be of interest to this Subcommittee. The report was prepared by Bruno David, a scientist in the Science and Strategy Directorate of the Waikato Regional Council.

During questions, answers and related discussion Subcommittee members noted the following points:

- The assistance of local residents in documenting the location of adult Koi Carp would be appreciated.
- It was understood that Koi Carp were present in the Whakahoro Canal, the Waitoa and Piako Rivers, and the size of the problem in the Waihou River was yet to be identified. There was a large number in the Hikutaia and it had been suggested that they should be eradicated to avoid further spread.

S Steverson moved/W Gore seconded

TVSc17/23

**THAT the report “Koi Carp in the Waihou Piako System” (Doc # 10420679 dated 6 May 2017) be received for information.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/23)**

**Upcoming Agenda Items 2016/17**

File: 75 80 20 (Agenda Item 15) Doc # 10435836

Presented by Zone Manager Hauraki (K Botting), this report provided an opportunity to discuss items identified to date for Subcommittee meetings in 2016/17 as well as identify any other items to be reported or considered by the Subcommittee.

During questions, answers and related discussion the Subcommittee noted that the list of items should include:

- Long Term Plan and any business cases
- Flood Remediation Update
- Integrated Catchment Management Climate Change Guidance Note
- Arising out of the Drain Planting Trial, Discussion about Plantings – to be treated as an asset and need to be managed, for example poplars need pruning quite intensively for the first five to ten years.

W Gore moved/Cr Minogue seconded

TVSc17/24

**THAT the report “Upcoming Agenda Items 2016/17” (Doc # 10435836 dated 12 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (TVSc17/24)**

The meeting closed at 12.24 pm.

---

**Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee  
MINUTES**

---

Minutes of a meeting of the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee Committee held in Council Chambers, Waikato Regional Council, 401 Grey Street, Hamilton East on 2 June 2017 at 10 am.

<b>Chairman</b>	<b>Present:</b> Noel Smith
<b>Local Community Representatives</b>	<b>Members</b> Kerry Amon Melville Bain John Blair Chris Gardiner Craig Graham David Rawlence Eddie Shattock Maurice Steffert Brian Walker
<b>Co-Chair of Integrated Catchment Management Committee (South)</b>	Cr Stuart Kneebone

<b>Staff</b>	<b>In Attendance:</b> Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager Guy Russell – Operations Manager Russell Powell – Works Supervisor - Waipā Steve Edwards – Works Supervisor - Drainage Adam Munro – Manager – Hauraki/Coromandel Sarah McLeay – Democracy Advisor
--------------	--

**Apologies**

Cr Alan Livingston  
Cr Tipa Mahuta  
Cr Russ Rimmington  
John Fransen  
Graham Membery  
Robert Mouritis

Accepted

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL****Confirmation of Agenda**

(Agenda Item 2)

Noel Smith moved/Melville Bain seconded

WCDAS17/17

**RESOLVED THAT**

- 1 the agenda of the meeting of the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee of 2 June 2017, as circulated, be confirmed as the business of the meeting subject to noting that the correct start time was 10 am.
- 2 the order of business in the agenda be amended so that item 12 follows item 5 to prevent a member of the public in attendance, interested in item 12, from having to wait.
- 3 the extract of the minutes of the Council meeting held on 27 April 2017 be received.

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/17)

**Disclosures of Interest**

(Agenda Item 3)

There were no disclosures of interest.

**Minutes of Previous Meeting**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 4) Doc 10114259 and 10317792

Chris Gardiner moved/David Rawlence seconded

WCDAS17/18

**RESOLVED****THAT the minutes of the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee's meeting held on 20 March 2017 be confirmed as a correct record.**

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/18)

**Chair's report**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 5) Doc 10391257

This was a verbal report from the Chair on issues of significance to the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory subcommittee.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Cyclones Debbie and Cook had caused significant flooding in some areas.
- There were resource consents and operational protocols in place that regulate the way in which Mercury NZ Limited managed Lake Taupō levels and flows within the Waikato Hydro System (WHS) to minimise the impact on the Waikato and Waipā Rivers downstream of Lake Karapiro.
- The Karapiro dam had the effect of lengthening flood duration by reducing the instantaneous peak of water moving through the system. Overall, the scale of these type of flood events would have resulted in higher levels and likely more damage if the WHS wasn't in place.

Noel Smith moved/Maurice Steffert seconded

WCDAS17/19

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the verbal report "Chairman's Report June 2017" (Doc 10391257, dated 16 May 2017) presented by the Chair be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/19)**

With the consent of the Committee item 12 was moved forward to be dealt with after item 5.

**Summary Update on Current Issues – June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 12) Doc 10390962

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to provide an update on progress with various ongoing issues relating to the Central Waikato Catchment.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Water from Lake Ngaroto-iti flowed into Lake Ngaroto via a drain which was recently cleaned. This had greatly improved the flooding around Lake Ngaroto iti.
- Lake Ngaroto drained into the Mangatoama Stream via a weir. The height of the weir influenced the height of the lake.
- Waipā District Council had a resource consent to retain the same weir level all year rather than dropping it in winter, commencing this winter. As a part of this regime, Waipā District Council constructed a channel to divert the Lake Ngaroto iti water around Lake Ngaroto. This had not operated as expected with the result that Lake Ngaroto water levels had been higher than anticipated. With the recent rainfall, there had been flooding in some areas bordering the Lake for extended periods. This had been compounded by the inability to use machinery in the area due to land saturation.
- Waikato Regional Council was reviewing the situation including an audit of the resource consent and building a closer relationship with Waipā District Council. Action was needed as soon as possible.

Melville Bain moved /John Blair seconded

WCDAS17/20

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report "Summary Update on Current Projects" (Doc 10390962, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/20)**

The meeting returned to the order of the agenda.

**Works report to May 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 6) Doc 10389072

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to provide an update on progress with the work programmes in the Waikato Central drainage area for the period 1 February 2017 to 1 May 2017.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Drainage systems had been tested in the recent weather events.
- The Waikato Regional Council operations staff were thanked for their work coping with flooding.

Maurice Steffert moved/Eddie Shattock seconded

WCDAS17/21

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the “Works report to May 2017” (Doc 10389072, dated 4 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/21)**

**Report on Flooding – March/April 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 7) Doc 10270542

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to provide a summary of the recent flooding events.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Waikato Regional Council’s level of drainage service was based on a 10 year event and three-day clearance.
- There was more sediment movement in the recent weather events than in the past, killing more pasture.

Kerry Amon moved/Eddie Shattock seconded

WCDAS17/22

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the “Report on Flooding – March/April 2017” (Doc 10270542, dated 18 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/22)**

**Financial Report - June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 8) Doc 10389771

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to provide the financial statements for each of the Waikato Central drainage areas/subdivisions for the period from 1 July 2016 to 30 April 2017.

David Rawlence moved/Melville Bain seconded

WCDAS17/23

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the “Financial Report – June 2017” (Doc 10389771, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/23)**

**Rates Comparison Report - June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 9) Doc 10485389

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to compare the rating levels between the various Waikato Central drainage areas, as requested at the last subcommittee meeting.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Rate classifications were shown on rate notices.
- Some rating classifications had been inherited from District Councils.
- Lifestyle subdivision of rural land often demanded increased drainage capacity.
- Waikato Regional Council provided flood level data to district Councils to inform their building consent requirements.

Chris Gardiner moved/Kerry Amon seconded

WCDAS17/24

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the “Rates Comparison Report – June 2017” (Doc 10485389, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/24)**

**SECTION B FOR RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL**

**Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 10) Doc 10489205

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to:

- a provide an overview of the process to develop the Waikato Regional Council 2018-2028 Long Term Plan.
- b seek feedback on the known issues impacting activities and requiring a response from the Long Term Plan.
- c alert the Committee to other issues that may require attention in the future.

During discussion, it was noted:

- This was a standard report used to seek feedback from all catchment and drainage subcommittees.
- Specific items relevant to Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee were included on page 59 of the agenda.

Noel Smith moved/Craig Graham seconded

WCDAS17/25

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the “Waikato Regional Council Long Term Plan and Level of Service review” (Doc 10489205 dated 17 May 2017) be received.**

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/25)

Noel Smith moved/Craig Graham seconded

WCDAS17/26

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Committee supports budgets that ensure, as a minimum, current levels of service are maintained.**

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/26)

**Proposal for Boundary Change for Matangi/Hautapu – June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 11) Doc 10443930

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to seek support in principle to initiate a boundary change in the Matangi area, as requested by the Matangi Drainage Committee.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Consultation about this proposal would be undertaken as part of the Long Term Plan process.

Eddie Shattock moved/Chris Gardiner seconded

WCDAS17/27

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Proposal for Boundary change for Matangi/Hautapu - June 2017” (Doc 10443930, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/27)

Eddie Shattock moved/Chris Gardiner seconded

WCDAS17/28

**RECOMMENDED**

**THAT the Waikato Central Drainage Advisory Subcommittee support in principle the proposed boundary changes in the Matangi area, and recommend this be included in the upcoming 2018-28 Long Term Plan.**

The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/28)

**SECTION A UNDER DELEGATION FOR THE INFORMATION OF COUNCIL**

**Health and safety for land drainage – June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 13) Doc 10389078

Presented by Roger Spooner – Drainage Manager to provide information on health and safety as it applies to the land drainage work programmes.

During discussion, it was noted:

- A high level of compliance had been found on spot audits.

Kerry Amon moved/David Rawlence seconded

WCDAS17/29

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Health and Safety and land drainage – June 2017” (Doc 10389078, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/29)**

**Manor Park Pump – June 2017**

File 03 02 17 (Agenda Item 14) Doc 10487578

Presented by Roger to provide information on a ratepayer initiated issue associated with Manor Park pumping.

During discussion, it was noted:

- Community support would be required for consideration of a change.

Maurice Steffert moved/Eddie Shattock seconded

WCDAS17/30

**RESOLVED**

**THAT the report “Manor Park Pump - June 2017” (Doc 10487578, dated 16 May 2017) be received.**

**The motion was put and carried (WCDAS17/30)**

Meeting closed at 12.15

The Chair  
 Environment Waikato's Lower Waikato Catchment Committee  
 C/- Malcolm Lumsden  
 28/03/2017

Dear Sir

As you are aware WRC is in the process of developing a CMP for the Lake Waikare-Whangamarino Catchment (a priority Catchment under proposed PC1.)

Landowners have been reticent to engage with the CMP while the PC1 process has been underway.

A Landowners Group (Primary Stakeholders) have had a couple of earlier discussions with the WRC CMP team and now believe the time is better to begin a constructive engagement process with fellow landowners.

On Monday the 27<sup>th</sup> of March, a representative group of 14 Landowners from the 4 sub catchments to be included in the proposed Lake Waikare/Whangamarino Catchment Management Plan, met at 11.30am at the Rangiriri Tearooms. Sector Representatives from Fonterra, DairyNZ, & Beef & Lamb were also present. The purpose of the meeting was to discuss landowner disaffection about a perceived lack of consultation over the proposal and to seek input as a "Stakeholder group". While Council seems to think landowners are covered as members of the community, Farmer landowners see this as an affront given that they control the single largest land area in the catchment and community interest in many cases do not reflect farmer interests.

By coming together, it is intended to ensure that landowners form a focal point for consultation. There is disquiet that other groups such as Dairy NZ and Beef and Lamb are often asked to input for farmers when in reality they are employed by farmers. This was very evident in the One Plan process.

Following a very strident discussion about the perceived treatment of landowners through the One Plan process, the meeting passed the following resolutions;

#### **Resolutions to WRC LW Catchment Committee**

Landowner Representatives from each of the 4 Sub catchments that make up the Lake Waikare - Whangamarino Catchment met on 27<sup>th</sup> March and passed the following resolutions:

1. "That the landowners present agree to instigate the formation of a 'Primary Stakeholder Trust' to seek meaningful involvement in the development of the Proposed Lake Waikare /Whangamarino CMP"

P Buckley/Mike peters

2. "That Mr J Cotman be confirmed as interim Chair."

G Clune/M Peters

3. "That this Stakeholder Trust has been formed in anticipation of being granted a Governance role in the decision making processes in partnership with the CMP Project Team (Operational)"

P Buckley/C Falconer

We seek the Catchment Committee support to take these resolutions forward to the appropriate Council Committee for discussion.

We believe that the innovative approach being offered (as noted in the resolutions noted above) will create a win-win by kick starting the CMP at the grassroots where it is freely acknowledged that actions will be required to be considered to fully achieve a workable, credible CMP.

We ask you to table this letter at your next LW zone meeting and we seek support from your committee for these proposals put forward in a spirit of co-operation with the WRC CMP Project Team.

I attach an outline of the structure that we wish to build our 'Partnership' on.

Regards,

Jim Cotman

Interim Chair - Primary Stakeholders Trust

[cotmanj@xtra.co.nz](mailto:cotmanj@xtra.co.nz)

Ph 078267898